

Ben Goldstein Ceri Jones Vicki Anderson Irina Spătaru Ioana Tudose Ioana Adam



Limba modernă 1 – studiu intensiv

# Limba engleză

Clasa a VIII-a



Acest manual este proprietatea Ministerului Educației și Cercetării.

Acest proiect de manual școlar este realizat în conformitate cu Programa școlară aprobată prin Ordinul ministrului educației naționale nr. 3393/28.02.2017.

119 – număr unic de telefon la nivel național pentru cazurile de abuz împotriva copiilor

116.111 – numărul de telefon de asistență pentru copii



Ben Goldstein Ceri Jones Vicki Anderson Irina Spătaru Ioana Tudose Ioana Adam



Limba modernă 1 – studiu intensiv

# Limba engleză

Clasa a VIII-a



Manualul scolar a fost aprobat de Ministerul Educatiei și Cercetării prin ordinul de ministru nr. 4500/10.07.2025.

Manualul este distribuit elevilor în mod gratuit, atât în format tipărit, cât și în format digital, și este transmisibil timp de patru ani școlari, începând
din anul școlar 2025-2026.
Inchestoratul Coolar

Inspectoratul Şcolar	
Scools/Coloniul/Lice	aul

#### ACEST MANUAL A FOST FOLOSIT DE:

	Numele elevului	lui Clasa Anul școlai	Anul școlar	Aspectul manualului*			
Anul				format tipărit		format digital	
				la primire	la predare	la primire	la predare
1							
2							
3							
4							

- \* Pentru precizarea aspectului manualului se va folosi unul dintre următorii termeni: nou, bun, îngrijit, neîngrijit, deteriorat.
- \* Cadrele didactice vor verifica dacă informațiile înscrise în tabelul de mai sus sunt corecte.
- \* Elevii nu vor face niciun fel de însemnări pe manual.

#### Referenți științifici:

conf. univ. dr. Adrian Oțoiu, Facultatea de Litere, Universitatea Tehnică, Cluj-Napoca prof. dr. Mihaela Avram, Colegiul Național "Elena Cuza", București

Coordonator redacție: Cătălin Georgescu Coordonator editorial: Gabriela Pérez Ortíz Redactare: Jeffrey Grinvalds, Ioana Tudose Corectură: Helen Lumb, David Richardson

Copertă, coordonare tehnică și prepress: Florin Paraschiv

Tehnoredactare: Mihaela Aramă

Activități digitale interactive și platformă e-learning: Infomedia Pro SRL. Website: https://infomediapro.ro/

Înregistrări și procesare sunet: Ian Harker, Dave Morritt, BraveArts, ML Sistems Consulting

Voci: Helen Lumb, David Richardson

Credite foto: Shutterstock, Dreamstime, Getty Images, Alamy, Profimedia, Pixabay, Pexels, Freepik

Credite video: Dreamstime, Pixabay Animații: Integra, Film Experience

ISBN 978-630-358-031-9

Această publicație este înregistrată la British Library, ISBN 9781009816878.







Manualul este rezultatul colaborării dintre Cambridge University Press și Editura Art Klett.

Prelucrare după: Eyes Open Level 3, Student's Book/Ben Goldstein, Ceri Jones with Vicki Anderson and Eoin Higgins și Eyes Open Level 4, Student's Book/Ben Goldstein, Ceri Jones with Vicki Anderson © Cambridge University Press 2015, în parteneriat cu Discovery Education™ Editie publicată sub licentă. Editia originală a fost publicată pentru prima dată în 2015 de Cambridge University Press.

Ediție originală © Cambridge University Press 2015 Ediție românească © Cambridge University Press 2025 Distribuit exclusiv de Editura Art Klett

Pentru comenzi puteți contacta Departamentul Difuzare C.P. 12, O.P. 63, cod poștal 014880, sector 1, București Telefoane: 021 796 73 83, 021 796 73 80

Fax: 021 369 31 99 www.art-educational.ro

Toate drepturile asupra acestei lucrări sunt rezervate Editurii Art Klett.

Nicio parte a acestei lucrări nu poate fi reprodusă, stocată ori transmisă, sub nicio formă (electronic, mecanic, fotocopiere, înregistrare sau altfel), fără acordul prealabil scris al editurii.

© Editura Art Klett, 2025

## Foreword

English and Romanian teachers have created, through **Limba modernă 1 – studiu intensiv. Limba engleză. Clasa a VIII-a**, a textbook that follows the Romanian Curriculum step by step, offering:

- high-interest video and stimulating global topics that spark curiosity and engage and motivate teenage learners;
- a careful progression of personalised language building activities that leads to greater spoken and written fluency;
- flexible teaching support for mixed-ability classes that includes graded tests and extra practice activities.



## Unit tour Limba modernă 1 - studiu intensiv. Limba engleză. Clasa a VIII-a



Unit opener

Each unit starts with an impactful

image designed to spark curiosity and

discussion, and introduce the unit topic.

Vocabulary, grammar and unit aims are clearly identified so that students and teachers can easily follow the syllabus progression and record achievement.

The Student's Book has two versions: Student's Book – printed version

### Student's Book – digital version

(includes, apart from the information from the printed version, over 200 MILA – multimedia interactive learning activities)

#### The Student's Book contains:

A Starter section to revise basic grammar and vocabulary + 8 Units + Extras.

#### Each unit has the following structure:

Vocabulary + Reading + Language focus 1 + Listening and vocabulary + Language focus 2 + Discover culture + Speaking + Writing + Extras.

There is a Review and an Evaluation test after every two units and also a Final evaluation test.

**Extras:** Say it right!, Grammar reference, Vocabulary bank, Reading for pleasure, Holidays, CLIL, Projects, Irregular verbs, Phonemic script, Maps



Vocabulary section focuses on a listen, check and repeat task through which students can hear how the target vocabulary is pronounced and practise it themselves.

Reading section features a reading text which provides a natural context for the new grammar. All reading texts are recorded.



Section 1. The control of the bid of the control o

The start of the s

#### Language focus 1 and 2

sections highlight examples that are contextualised in the preceding reading and listening passages. Many of the Language Focus pages include a *Get it Right* feature and a *Say it Right* feature.

Listening and Vocabulary section provides a natural context for the new grammar and vocabulary items.





Discover culture section expands on the unit topic and provides a motivating insight into a variety of cultures around the world.



Speaking section provides a progression of easy-to-follow activities which guide students towards written and spoken fluency.



Writing section includes a model text from the featured genre and follows a *Process Writing* methodology.



Review section provides two pages of exercises which are grouped under Vocabulary and Language focus.
They come after every two units.

#### Manualul are două versiuni: Varianta tipărită



#### Varianta digitală

(include, pe lângă informațiile din varianta tipărită, peste 200 de AMII - activități multimedia interactive de învățare)

#### Manualul cuprinde:

O sectiune introductivă de recapitulare a notiunilor gramaticale si lexicale de bază + 8 Unități de învățare + Anexe.

#### Fiecare unitate are următoarea structură:

Vocabular + Lectură + Gramatică 1 + Ascultare și vocabular + Gramatică 2 + Cultură + Comunicare + Redactare + Anexe.

Există o recapitulare, un test la fiecare două unități și o testare finală.

Anexe: Pronunță corect!, Gramatică, Vocabular, Lectură, Sărbători, CLIL, Proiecte, Lista verbelor neregulate, Tabel fonetic, Hărți

exercises.

**Evaluation test section contains two pages** in which the students' knowledge is examined to determine what they have learned after every two units.



**Grammar reference section** provides more detailed examples and explanations, plus additional practice



Vocabulary bank section contains all the new vocabulary from each unit. Activities revise and consolidate the language.



**CLIL** section gives students the opportunity to study other subjects through the medium of English. Each CLIL lesson is linked to the topic of the corresponding unit.





Reading for pleasure section focuses on the world of literature.



Projects section provides eight optional projects in which students are given a clear model to guide them.

#### Instrucțiuni de utilizare a manualului digital

The texbook contains three types of multimedia interactive learning activities (MILA). The three types of MILA are marked as follows/Activitățile multimedia interactive de învățare sunt de trei feluri și sunt simbolizate pe parcursul manualului astfel:



Static MILA — listening and studying an image/Activitate statică, de ascultare și observare a unei imagini



Animated MILA – film and animation/ Activitate animată (film/animație)



Interactive MILA — exercise with immediate feedback after solving/ Activitate interactivă, de tip exercițiu, cu feedback imediat în urma rezolvării

Other buttons used in the digital version/Alte butoane folosite în varianta digitală:



Cuprins manual



Fereastră de afișare a rezultatelor



Ajutor general manual



Micșorarea/mărirea imaginii



Salt la începutul/finalul manualului



Pagină înainte/pagină înapoi





Mărire pe tot ecranul



Schimbarea modului de afișare



Includerea unei notițe



Introducerea de marcaje colorate



Informații despre utilizator



systematically observe students' progress.

## **Contents**

Starter Unit	Vocabulary		Language focus				
	<ul><li>p8 Art around us, Peri</li><li>p9 Adventure sports a</li><li>p10 Personal qualities</li><li>p11 Verbs and prepos</li><li>and cooking</li></ul>	and activities	<ul> <li>p8 Word order in questions, Subject/object questions</li> <li>p9 Present perfect with ever, never, for and since, Present perfect questions, Present perfect and past simple</li> <li>p10 Present perfect with still, yet, already and just, Present perfect simple vs. present perfect continuous</li> <li>p11 Future simple, be going to, will and may/might, Future continuous, First conditional, Time clauses</li> </ul>				
Unit	Vocabulary	Reading	Language focus 1	Listening and vocabulary	Language focus 2		
1 Extreme living	p13 Extreme weather p116 Say it right! /I/ and /i:/	<b>p14</b> A blog <b>Explore</b> words in context	p15 Present simple vs. present continuous (review) ● The long winter	<b>p16</b> Survival essentials A conversation	<b>p17</b> Past simple vs. past continuous (review)		
2 Fears	<b>p23</b> Fears	<b>p24</b> An advice column <b>Explore</b> prepositional phrases <b>Get it right!</b> advice	p25 ● be going to, will and present tenses for the future (review) ● Creepy creatures	<ul><li>p26 Conversations</li><li>between friends</li><li>-ed and -ing adjectives</li><li>Get it right! bored/boring</li></ul>	<b>p27</b> ● Quantifiers (review) a little/a few <b>p116 Say it right!</b> ough		
	Review Units 1 and	l 2 pages 32–33	Evaluation test Units 1 and	2 pages 34–35			
3 School life	<b>p37</b> Life at school	p38 A student blog Explore words in context Get it right! want + infinitive	p39 ● Second conditional ● The women of Ayoquesco p116 Say it right! Intonation in second conditional sentences	<b>p40</b> A discussion make and do (review)	<b>p41</b> ● Second conditional questions ● need/needn't for talking about necessity/ obligation; should/shouldn't for making recommendations/ giving advice		
4 Green planet	p47 Materials Get it right! the and plural nouns p116 Say it right! Stress in compound words	<b>p48</b> An article <b>Explore</b> words in context	p49 ● Present simple passive. Present simple passive questions Get it right! active vs. passive ● Where does it all go?	<b>p50</b> A class presentation Energy issues	<b>p51  </b> Past simple passive Past simple passive questions		
	Review Units 3 and	l 4 pages 56–57	Evaluation test Units 3 and	4 pages 58–59			
5 Trends	<b>p61</b> Clothes	<b>p62</b> Short online texts <b>Explore</b> words in context	p63 used to and would (review)  ● Future in the past  ● Milan fashion week	<b>p64</b> An interview Adjectives and dependent prepositions	p65 ● Past perfect simple ● Past perfect continuous ● Past perfect continuous vs. past continuous p117 Say it right! Sentence stress in the past perfect		
6 Stuff we like	<b>p71</b> Everyday objects	<b>p72</b> A news article <b>Explore</b> words in context	<ul> <li>p73</li></ul>	<b>p74</b> A radio report Modifiers	p75 ● Relative pronouns Get it right! relative pronouns as subject p117 Say it right! Intonation in relative clauses		
	Review Units 5 and	6 pages 80–81 Evalu	uation test Units 5 and 6 page	es 82–83			
7 Weird and wonderful	<b>p85</b> Story elements	<b>p86</b> A plot summary <b>Explore</b> prepositions and adverbs of movement	p87	<b>p88</b> A podcast Linking phrases	<b>p89</b> ● must have, can't have, might/may/could have for talking about possibility and making deductions should/shouldn't for present/future expectation		
8 Right or wrong?	<b>p95</b> Crimes	<b>p96</b> News stories <b>Explore</b> words in context	p97 ● Reported statements Get it right! tell and say ● On the run	<b>p98</b> Reporting verbs A news report	p99 ● Reported questions Indirect questions p117 Say it right! Intonation in indirect questions		

			_			
			Extras			
			p118 Grammar reference			
Discover culture (Video and Reading)	Speaking	Writing	Extras			
p18 ● People of the mangrove jungle p19 A magazine article Explore prepositional phrases	p20 ● Real talk: Which do you prefer – towns and cities or the countryside? Giving your opinion	p21 An email to a friend Useful language: Opening and closing an email	p148 CLIL Biology – Global warming ● Hot topics p120 Grammar reference p130 Vocabulary bank p156 Project 1			
<b>p28</b>	p30 ● Real talk: What are you afraid of? Expressing surprise	<b>p31</b> A message to a friend <b>Useful language:</b> Introducing news and explaining things	p149 CLIL Geography – Living in a global city ● City or country? p121 Grammar reference p131 Vocabulary bank p158 Project 2			
<b>p42</b> ● Playing with Maths <b>p43</b> An article <b>Explore</b> phrasal verbs (1)	p44 • Real talk: Who would you talk to if you needed advice? Asking for and giving advice	p45 A problem page Useful language: Summarising a problem and giving advice	p150 CLIL Technology − Social media Be safe online p122 Grammar reference p132 Vocabulary bank p160 Project 3			
p52   ■ Build it better p53 An article Explore phrasal verbs (2)	p54 ● Real talk: Do you do any volunteer work? Apologising and explaining	p55 A newspaper article Useful language: Using direct speech	p151 CLIL Chemistry – Renewable energy Driving into the future p123 Grammar reference p133 Vocabulary bank p162 Project 4			
p66  Inside the guitar p67 A magazine article Explore compound nouns	p68 • Real talk: What music and fashion were your parents into when they were growing up? Buying clothes	p69 An essay Useful language: Linking phrases	p152 CLIL Social Science – The history of jeans  ● Trendsetters p124 Grammar reference p134 Vocabulary bank p164 Project 5			
p76 ● An invention that changed everything p77 An article Explore communication phrases and phrasal verbs	p78 ● Real talk: What's your favourite gadget? Buying a gadget	<b>p79</b> An online review <b>Useful language:</b> Describing a product	p153 CLIL Technology − Passive houses What a waste! p126 Grammar reference p135 Vocabulary bank p166 Project 6			
p90   A lost civilisation p91 A magazine article Explore words in context	p92 ● Real talk: What's the biggest mistake you've ever made? Getting more information	<b>p93</b> Telling a story <b>Useful language:</b> Adverbs	p154 CLIL Biology – Extinction  ● Lions in danger p127 Grammar reference p136 Vocabulary bank p168 Project 7			
p100 ● Future directions p101 An article Explore verb expressions	p102 ● Real talk: What's the biggest lie you've ever been told? Clarifying	p103 An online article Useful language: Describing amounts	p155 CLIL ICT – Copyright True or false? p129 Grammar reference p137 Vocabulary bank p170 Project 8			
Final evaluation test A & B	pages 108–115					
Maps pages 172–174 Irregular verbs and phonemic symbols page 175						
1. 1. 3	J		3			

#### General and specific competences from the curriculum explored in the units

- 1. Receive oral messages in different communication situations
- 1.1. Select key information from a newscast/simple recorded material on topics of interest, when the utterances are clear and slow-paced
- 1.2. Identify essential information from simple reports that the speakers interrupt in order to complete/finish them
- 1.3. Operate with selected technical information to perform a task
- 1.4. Show interest in knowing personalities and cultural events
- 2. Speak in different communication situations
- 2.1. Present the main action of a book/film
- 2.2. Describe personal reactions, feelings about a happening/an event
- 2.3. Present a personal opinion on a given text/given context/given characters
- 2.4. Manage interaction situations that can lead to plan changes
- 2.5. Show interest in the quality of expression/interaction
- 3. Receive written messages in different communication situations
- 3.1. Identify the wanted information in different fragments of a text or in several texts, in order to solve a specific task
- 3.2. Identify aspects from articles or interviews in newspapers and magazines that express a position in relation to a current topic/event
- 3.3. Identify information from formal texts on topics of interest
- 3.4. Extract the pros and cons expressed by the author when discussing a nrohlem
- 3.5. Show interest in understanding different types of texts
- 4. Write messages in different communication situations
- 4.1. Transcribe relevant information from a speech/lecture/lesson
- 4.2. Write personal letters/digital messages presenting feelings, experiences, events through a few details
- 4.3. Describe feelings and reactions through a simple text which contains connectors
- 4.4. Write a short simple essay on a topic of interest, based on a given structure
- 4.5. Show interest in the quality of writing

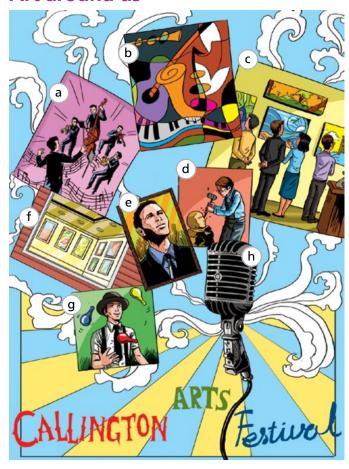
#### Competente generale si specifice din programa scolară

- 1. Receptarea de mesaje orale în diverse situații de comunicare
- 1.1. Selectarea informatiilor principale dintr-un buletin de stiri transmis la radio/din materiale înregistrate mai simple pe teme de interes, redate clar și rar
- 1.2. Identificarea informațiilor esențiale din relatări simple, întrerupte în vederea finalizării/completării acestora
- 1.3. Operarea cu informații tehnice selectate în vederea realizării unei sarcini de lucru
- 1.4. Manifestarea interesului pentru cunoașterea unor personalități și evenimente culturale
- 2. Exprimarea orală în diverse situații de comunicare
- 2.1. Prezentarea acțiunii principale a unei cărți/a unui film
- 2.2. Descrierea reacțiilor personale, a sentimentelor față de o întâmplare/ de un eveniment
- 2.3. Prezentarea unei opinii personale cu privire la un text dat/context dat/personaie date
- 2.4. Gestionarea situațiilor de interacțiune care pot genera schimbări de
- 2.5. Manifestarea interesului pentru calitatea exprimării/interacţiunii
- 3. Receptarea de mesaje scrise în diverse situații de comunicare
- 3.1. Localizarea informației dorite în diferite fragmente ale unui text sau în mai multe texte pentru rezolvarea unei sarcini specifice
- 3.2. Identificarea aspectelor din articole sau interviuri apărute în ziare si reviste care exprimă o poziție în legătură cu un subiect/eveniment
- 3.3. Identificarea informațiilor din texte formale pe teme de interes
- 3.4. Extragerea argumentelor pro și contra exprimate de autor în discutarea unei probleme
- 3.5. Manifestarea interesului pentru înțelegerea diferitelor tipuri de texte
- 4. Redactarea de mesaje în diverse situații de comunicare
- 4.1. Transcrierea informațiilor relevante dintr-un discurs/dintr-o prelegere/dintr-o lectie
- 4.2. Redactarea de scrisori personale/mesaje digitale în care sunt prezentate sentimente, experiente, evenimente prin câteva detalii
- 4.3. Descrierea sentimentelor și a reacțiilor prin intermediul unui text simplu care conține conectori
- 4.4. Redactarea unui eseu scurt și simplu pe o temă de interes, pe baza unei structuri date
- 4.5. Manifestarea interesului pentru calitatea redactării

## **Starter Unit**

## **Arts and entertainment**

#### Art around us



1 Match the pictures (a–h) with the words in the box.

mural portrait <del>orchestra</del> microphone gallery exhibition sculpture juggler

a orchestra

## Word order in questions

- Put the words in order to make questions for a band called All for One.
  - 1 playing / are / When / tonight / you / ? When are you playing tonight?
  - 2 meet / you / did / How / all / ?
  - 3 songs/writes/the/all/Who/?
  - 4 concert / When / first / was / your /?
  - 5 other / can / instruments / play / What / you /?
  - 6 do / do / you / your / in / time / What / free /?
  - 7 other / music / like / you / What / do /?
  - 8 going / after / finish / you / are / here / Where /
    you / ?

## **Performing**

Concert starts at 18 p.m.

Met at an arts festival — Simon and Tony were 2....

Simon plays the 3... and the piano.

Tony plays the violin and the "....

John sings and likes painting 5 ....

First concert — two years ago — they've never played in a 6....like this.

Free time - John does acting classes - he'd like to act 7 ... too.

## **Subject/object questions**

- 5 Complete the questions.
  - 1 'Hi Simon! Who *is your favourite singer*?' 'My favourite singer is Taylor Swift.'
  - 2 'Boys! What ....?'
    'We have pancakes for breakfast!'
  - 3 'Hey Tony! Who ....?'
    'My uncle taught me to play!'
  - 4 'Hi there! What ....?'
    'Lots of things give us ideas for songs love, life, friends ...'
  - 5 'Hey guys! Who ....?'
    'We often listen to the Beatles!'
  - 6 'Dudes! What ....?'
    'We chilled out in the hotel last night!'

## Your turn

6 Work with a partner. Student A is a member of a band, Student B is a music journalist. Conduct an interview.

Hi Joseph! So, what instruments can you play?

I can play ...

## **Exciting lives**

## Adventure sports and activities

- 1 Put the letters in order to make adventure sports and activities.
  - 1 I love <u>trekking</u> (gnirektk) I can walk all day in the mountains and not get tired.
  - 2 We look forward to winter and snowy weather every year so we can go .... (nkisig).
  - 3 My parents taught me to swim when I was a boy. They wanted me to be safe when we went \_\_\_\_(isaingl).
  - 4 You need very strong arms and no fear of high places if you want to try .... (bilcgnim).
  - 5 We saw all the big five animals when we went on .... (afairs) in Africa.
  - 6 People say the USA has the best .... (emeht prak) in the world, with the biggest and best rides!
  - 7 My first adventure holiday was a .... (rmumse pamc) in the mountains when I was 14.
  - 8 You can meet kids your age from another country if you go on a .... (locohs ganexhce).

## Present perfect with ever, never, for and since

- 2 Listen to Sam. When did he start travelling?
- Choose the correct words to complete Sam's blog post about his travel experiences. Then listen again and check.

## **Present perfect questions**

- 4 Complete the questions for Sam. Use the present perfect.
  - 1 Sam, have you ever been (ever/go) to Antarctica?
  - 2 Hey Sam. How long ... (live) abroad?
  - 3 Hi mate. (finish packing/yet)?
  - 4 How long ... (have) your blog?
  - **5** Wow, your trips are amazing! .... (ever/be) on TV?

## Present perfect and past simple

- 5 Listen to Tina. Where is she and what is she doing?
- 6 Ochoose the correct form of the verbs to complete the text. Then listen again and check.

We're in Freiburg! We've only been here for a day, but we <sup>1</sup> did / have done so many things already. Our bus <sup>2</sup> has arrived / arrived from Basel Airport at 6 p.m. It <sup>3</sup> has been / was dark then, so we <sup>4</sup> have gone / went to our guesthouse near the Black Forest. When we <sup>5</sup> have woken up / woke up this morning, the view <sup>6</sup> was / has been incredible.

I <sup>7</sup> have never seen / never saw anything so beautiful like this forest. We <sup>8</sup> have left / left the hotel at 9 a.m. to do some sightseeing. We <sup>9</sup> have visited / visited the Augustiner Museum and the Mundenhof zoo. After lunch, we <sup>10</sup> have rented / rented bikes and we <sup>11</sup> have cycled / cycled for a couple of hours in a park located in the West of the city centre, called Seepark. We <sup>12</sup> haven't had / didn't have anything to eat since lunchtime!

## Your turn

**7** Work with a partner. Imagine you are adventure travellers. Take turns to interview each other.

Have you ever been sailing?

Yes, I've been sailing many times.

Where have you been to?



I was born to travel! I've moved around the world every year ¹ever / since I was born! My parents took me on lots of trips when I was a child, and I've ²always / never lost the love of travelling. I started travelling full-time when I left school, and now I've been an adventure traveller ³for / since ten years. I've been to most of the continents, but I've ⁴never / always been to Australia. I've wanted to go there ⁵from / for years. That's my next trip! Have you ⁶ever / never been there? Follow my blog as I explore the biggest country in the world!



## **Home life**

## Present perfect with still, yet, already and just

- 2 Ochoose the correct words. Then listen again and check.

Mum: Tina! Have you finished your Maths homework

'vet / already?

Tina: No, Mum, I've got lots of homework today.

I haven't started my Maths 2yet / still.

Mum: Really? So what have you done so far?

Tina: I've <sup>3</sup>still / just finished Science and now I'm going

to start Geography. Then I <sup>4</sup>**already / still** have History and French to do. And Maths, of course.

Mum: Right. I think you need all afternoon. I've

<sup>5</sup>already / just made a cake. Do you want some?

Tina: No, thanks. I've <sup>6</sup>already / yet had some

chocolate today.

## Your turn

3 Ask and answer questions about what you have done today.

Have you done your homework yet?

No, I haven't done it yet.

Have you already had lunch?

Yes, I have.

## **Describing people**

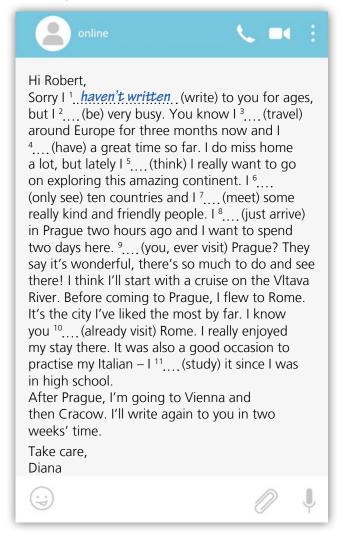
## **Personal qualities**

- 4 Join the parts of the sentences.
  - 1 I don't worry too much. In general, I usually take things easy.
  - 2 My brother feels uncomfortable when he has to socialise at parties.
  - 3 Jenna practises a lot every day to get her German language certificate.
  - **4** Justin Timberlake can sing, dance and act very well. To me,
  - 5 Someone who is concerned about others and who does kind things for them

- a He's shy and doesn't like meeting new people at all.
- **b** could be described as caring.
- c I only see the good things in life, so I guess that makes me a positive person.
- **d** She's really hardworking.
- e he's the most talented artist of his generation.

## Present perfect simple vs. present perfect continuous

- 5 Listen to Diana. How long has she been travelling in Europe?
- 6 Occupiete the text with the correct form of the present perfect simple or present perfect continuous. Use the verbs in brackets. Then listen again and check.



## Your turn

**7** Work with a partner. Imagine you have a new hobby. Take turns to interview each other.

What have you been doing lately?

I've been trying to learn how to paint watercolour landscapes two weeks now.

Really? Who has been teaching you?

## **Daily life**

## **Verbs and prepositions**

- 1 Complete the sentences with the following prepositions: about, for, from, in, of, on, to, with.
  - 1 It smells *of* lemon in here.
  - 2 She talks .... her mother on the phone every week.
  - 3 It took me two weeks to recover .... the flu.
  - 4 Shall I ask .... his phone number?
  - **5** The film is based .... a true story.
  - 6 Do you believe .... angels?
  - 7 I can provide you .... directions to their house.
  - 8 My hands smell .... onions.
  - 9 We were talking .... Sophie.

## Future simple, be going to, will and may/might; Future continuous

- 2 Choose the correct verbs to complete the sentences.
  - 1 Our plane (eaves) / might leave / will leave at 6.30 so hurry up!
  - 2 In 10 years' time I 'II be working / 'II work / work as a doctor.
  - 3 I'm sure Tim might not win / won't win / isn't winning the race because he hasn't trained enough.
  - 4 Look out! You will fall off / 're going to fall off / 're falling off.
  - 5 Tom's dad is flying / will fly / might fly to Paris tomorrow. He's got an important meeting there.
  - 6 My football course is lasting / will last / lasts for three weeks, starting from tomorrow.
- 3 Listen to the article. How will we be travelling in the future?
- 4 Complete the text with the correct form of the future continuous. Then listen again and check.

## First conditional; Time clauses



5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

as soon as when if (x2) unless (x2) could might (x2)

- 1 You won't be able to make this dish <u>unless</u> you have the right ingredients.
- 2 .... you want to come swimming with us tomorrow, you will have to get up early.
- 3 Tim will call me .... he gets home from school tonight.
- 4 I .... come to the skate park with you tomorrow if I have time, but I'm not sure yet.
- 5 What shall we do .... it's really cold tomorrow?
- 6 We won't catch the train .... we leave now.
- 7 My mum will make us some dinner .... we get home this evening.
- 8 If you continue to be angry all the time, you .... lose your friends in the near future.
- 9 I ... play tennis tomorrow if it rains, but I'm not sure yet.

## **Describing food and cooking**

- 6 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
  - 1 This cake is absolutely **disgusting** / **delicious**! Could I have another slice?
  - 2 This curry is really **bland / spicy**. I can't eat food that's as hot as this.
  - 3 I need to **spread / grate** some cheese to put on top of the pizza.
  - 4 I hate apples that are soft, but luckily these are really savoury / crunchy.
  - 5 I think meat tastes best if you bake / roast it in the oven.
  - 6 I've put a lot of sugar in my tea and now it's too sweet / salty.

## Your turn

Work with a partner. Prepare your favourite dish. Explain how to cook it to your partner.

Today's recipe is a French tart, quiche Lorraine. First, chop the bacon. Then stir the eggs in a bowl and ...

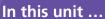
## World in the near future

By the year 2100, experts think that technology <sup>1</sup> will be controlling. (control) our lives completely – we <sup>2</sup> .... (do) everything via computers, smartphones and robots. They say that robots <sup>3</sup> .... (take on) the most difficult jobs, helping us save time and energy. Also, they believe that our bodies <sup>4</sup> .... (develop) into something part human, part machine. We <sup>5</sup> .... (not learn) using textbooks. Instead, we <sup>6</sup> .... (wear) virtual reality helmets and we <sup>7</sup> .... (communicate) with other people around the world. Transportation will also look different: we <sup>8</sup> .... (travel) in eco-friendly vehicles and rockets, and we <sup>9</sup> .... (use) teleportation devices. We <sup>10</sup> .... (explore) space and we <sup>11</sup> .... (colonise) other planets. Everything will be different in the future.



# SISCOVER BUCATION

# **Extreme living**





The long winter p15



People of the mangrove jungle p18



**Giving your** opinion p20



CLIL Hot topics p148

#### Vocabulary

- Extreme weather
- Words in context
- Survival essentials
- Prepositional phrases

#### **Language focus**

- Present simple and present continuous (review)
- Past simple and past continuous (review)



- understand a blog about extreme weather.
- describe where I live and past activities.
- understand a conversation about a news story.
- understand an article about a remote island.
- give my opinion, agree and disagree politely.
- write an email to a pen friend.

## What can you see in the photo?

Start thinking

- What do you think the man is doing?
- What is it like to live in a country with very cold weather?
- How do you think people keep



## **Vocabulary Extreme weather**

1 Match the words and phrases in the box with the pictures (a-i). Which photos are missing? Then listen, check and repeat.

hail boiling freezing heavy rain heatwave dry thunder and lightning sunny snowstorm high winds drizzle



- 2 Match the missing pictures from Exercise 1 to the definitions.
  - 1 If a day is ..., there is very little water in the air and no chance of rain.
  - 2 .... weather: there is a lot of sunshine and the sky is clear.
- 3 What months of the year do you think about with the weather words in Exercise 1? In July, it is usually boiling, but in October we have heavy rain.
- - 1 Victor (Argentina) heatwave, boiling

  - 2 Hannah (England)
  - Say it right! page 116

- 3 Oksana (Russia)
- 4 Silke (Germany)

T)

5 Helen (Romania)

## Your turn

- Make notes about extreme weather conditions in Romania.
- 6 Work with a partner. What does he/she do in extreme weather? Then report your partner's answers to the class.

What do you do when it's freezing?

I do my best to dress warm. I wear a lot of clothes and a scarf, hat and gloves.

- Work with a partner. Discuss the following statement: 'Climate change is a trigger for
- extreme weather events.

## Reading A blog

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where do you think Yakutsk is?
  - 2 What is special about it?
- Meg is a British student at the University of Yakutsk in Siberia, Russia. Read her blog. Do you think she prefers summer or winter there?
- 3 Read Meg's blog again. Answer the questions.
  - 1 What is Meg doing now?
    Meg is sitting indoors and writing her blog.
  - 2 What is the average daytime temperature in Yakutsk in winter?
  - 3 What effect does the extreme cold have on people's bodies?
  - 4 Why is she learning how to play kyyly?
  - 5 How many hours of sunlight do they get in Yakutsk in summer?
  - 6 What do people do in summer in Yakutsk?

## Explore words in context

Match the words and phrases from the blog with the definitions below.

fall outdoors indoors sub-zero conditions melt rise

- 1 inside a house or building indoors
- 2 outside a house or building
- 3 get lower

- 4 change from solid to liquid
- **5** get higher
- 6 when the temperature is less than 0 °C

## Your turn

- 5 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - 1 How is life in your town different in summer and in winter? In what way?
  - 2 Do you prefer winter or summer? Why?

In summer, it's very hot. I prefer winter because ...

## 6 Write a short blog entry.

- Describe the weather in winter and summer in your area.
- Say what you're doing now.

In winter, it's really cold. The temperatures are below freezing and it snows a lot.

At the moment, I'm writing this blog and I'm watching ...

## FREEZING IN SIBERIA!

December 12

It's winter here in Yakutsk. I'm sitting indoors and writing my blog because it's too cold to go outside. It's not snowing now, but I'm looking at the thermometer outside and it says -34 °C!

Yakutsk in Russia is considered the coldest inhabited city on Earth. From November to March, it's only light for three or four hours a day and the temperature hardly ever rises above freezing. The average daytime temperature is -30 °C and at night it sometimes falls as low as -60 °C.

Well, I'm not going out today – I'm staying indoors. People don't go out a lot here when it's so cold – the air freezes inside your nose. At –40 °C, you can't stay outdoors for more than ten minutes. At –45 °C, the metal on your glasses sticks to your face! I'm learning how to play a popular sport called *kyyly* – a kind of jumping competition. It uses a lot of energy and it keeps you warm and strong. I play kyyly three times a week. I'm trying to keep fit, which is really important when you live in sub-zero conditions!

In summer, Yakutsk is a different city. The snow melts and the temperature rises to 26 °C and more, but people are usually happy to have a heatwave after ten months of winter. It's the season of 'white nights', when it never gets dark, not even at midnight. Camping and barbecues are the favourite summer activities. You can't imagine how much I am looking forward to it!



**FACT!** In Yakutsk, Siberia, the lowest ever recorded temperature was -64 °C.





## Language focus 1 Present simple vs. present continuous (review)

- 1 Complete the examples from the text on page 14. Then complete the rules.
  - 1 It's \_\_\_now, but I'm looking at the thermometer outside and it says -34 °C!
  - 2 I .... how to play a popular local sport called *kyyly*. It .... a lot of energy.

We use the present 1.... to talk about what normally happens, routines and facts. We use the present 2.... to talk about what is happening now or around now.

- 3 The temperature ... rises above freezing.
- 4 It .... falls as low as -60 °C.
- 5 People are .... happy to have a heatwave after ten months of winter.
- Grammar reference page 120

The people are really nice and

I 10 .... (learn) a lot of Russian.'

Complete the text with the correct form of the present simple or the present continuous. Use the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check.

Meg is in Siberia for a year at the university of Yakutsk and life is very different. In the UK, she usually ¹...drives... (drive) to university. In Yakutsk, she ²....(take) the bus every day. She ³.... (study) Russian in the UK and she'd like to be a translator. She's got exams this week so she ⁴.... (study) really hard. She says, 'Right now I ⁵.... (read) a book in Russian. Luckily, I've managed to learn the alphabet. I 6.... (try) not to use the dictionary too much.' She 7.... (have) a great time in Yakutsk because she 8.... (go) to the university International Club twice a week. They 9.... (organise) activities and she meets lots of local students there. 'It's great fun.



## **3** Put the words in order to make sentences. Write the verbs in the correct tense.

- 1 usually / cold / be / It / very / my / in / city / I / so / dress / warmly
  - It's usually very cold in my city, so I dress warmly.
- weather / the / think / She / that / weather / the / here / very / be / cold
- 3 go / mountains / rarely / We / camping / the / in / winter / snow / because / in / we / not like
- 4 cats / dogs / and / It / rain / normally / here / sunny / but / and / dry / and / be / it / summer / in / today
- 5 class / usually / My / go / trips / school / on / Christmas / May / in / this / but / time / go / they / trip / on / a / Sibiu / fair / in / to / the
- 6 Sam / go / usually / to / by / school / bus / today / but / his / dad / him / drive

## Your turn

- 4 Work with a partner. Make notes and then discuss.
  - 1 Tell your partner about your daily routine.
  - 2 Imagine you're staying in Yakutsk for a month. Tell your partner about how your life is different.

I usually get up at about 7.30. Then I have breakfast. ... Now I'm living in Yakutsk and I'm no longer a morning person. I get up later ...

Learn about someone living in a cold country.

- What does the Kilcher family do during the day?
- What are they preparing for?
- Why did they have to make another plan?





The long winter

## **Vocabulary Survival essentials**

1 Match the words with the items in the picture. Then listen, check and repeat.

sun cream water bottle sunglasses compass map sleeping bag penknife torch first aid kit camera glasses contact lenses

1 torch

- 2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - 1 Which of the things in Exercise 1 do you have on your mobile phone?
  - 2 Which of the things do you have at home?
- **Vocabulary bank •** page 130



## **Listening A conversation**

- Work in small groups. Look at the photo below and answer the questions.
  - 1 What do you think are the dangers of walking in a landscape like this?
  - 2 What do you need to survive for three days there?
- 4 Listen to two friends discussing a news story about a hiker. Does it have a happy or sad ending?
- 5 **(1)** Listen again and answer the questions.
  - 1 In which country was Sam travelling? *In Australia, in the outback.*
  - 2 What happened to him?
  - 3 What was the weather like?
  - 4 For how long was he lost?
  - 5 What objects did Sam have with him?
  - 6 How did the contact lenses save him?
  - 7 How did his family find him in the end?

## Your turn

- Imagine you are lost in the mountains in winter. With a partner, decide how important the things in Exercise 1 are.
  - Put them in order of importance
     (1 = very important; 12 = not important).
  - Compare your list with another pair.
  - Think of three other things that are useful.

I think ... is/are important because ...

I don't agree. I think ...



## Language focus 2 Past simple vs. past continuous (review)

- 1 Complete the examples from the listening on page 16. Then choose the correct words to complete the rules.
  - 1 One morning he **went** jogging.
  - 2 While he **jogging**, he got lost.
  - 3 He ... running and listening to music.
  - 4 He .... **see** where he was going.
  - 5 How long ... he **lost** for?
  - 6 .... someone **looking** for him?

We use the past 1... to talk about finished actions in the past. We use the past 2... to talk about actions in progress in the past.

**Watch out!** Pay attention to the sequence of tenses:

- <sup>3</sup> We use when / while before the past simple.
- <sup>4</sup> We use **when / while** before the past continuous.
- Grammar reference page 120
- 2 Choose the correct verbs to complete the sentences.
  - 1 Sam jogged /was jogging when he got / was getting lost.
  - 2 I watched / was watching the news when I saw / was seeing an interesting story.
  - 3 When the helicopter found / was finding him, a lot of people looked / were looking for him.
  - 4 When he ran / was running out of water, he still tried / was still trying to find the ranch.
  - 5 It didn't rain / wasn't raining when Sam started / was starting his run.
  - 6 He lost / was losing his sunglasses while he walked / was walking in the outback.
- 3 Rewrite the sentences in two different ways. Use when or while.
  - 1 Peter was walking in the forest. He got lost. While Peter was walking in the forest, he got lost. Peter was walking in the forest when he got lost.
  - 2 We were driving. A dog ran in front of our car.
  - 3 She was looking at the map. She dropped her camera.
  - 4 I was reading the compass. Julia was putting on sun cream.

4 Occuplete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check.

# TEENAGERS IN CANYON RESCUE

Emergency services

1. rescued (rescue)
two teenagers, Nicholas
Ramirez and Kyndall
Cendoya, last night after
a three-day hunt in Falls
Canyon, California. The

teenagers <sup>2</sup>.... (walk) during the Easter holidays when they <sup>3</sup>.... (disappear) late on Tuesday night. It <sup>4</sup>.... (rain) heavily and there were high winds. The teenagers <sup>5</sup>.... (not have) any food or water and they <sup>6</sup>.... (not carry) any dry clothes in their backpacks. They <sup>7</sup>.... (find) a cave and <sup>8</sup>.... (stay) there for two nights. On the third day, a local hiker <sup>9</sup>.... (see) them. They <sup>10</sup>.... (sleep) in the cave. A rescue helicopter <sup>11</sup>.... (come) to take them home.

## Your turn

Write six questions. Use the words from the boxes and the past simple or past continuous.

What When	do come sleep watch	last night morning yesterday at 8 a.m.
Where Why	go eat listen	at 8 a.m. during English class

Why were you sleeping during English class?

6 Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 5 with a partner.

What were you doing yesterday at 8 a.m.?

I was watching TV.





## Discover culture





1 Work with a partner. Look at the photo of the mangrove jungle. How do you think it is different from a normal jungle?

In which type of jungle do you think it would be easier to live? Why? Consider transport, food and climate.





Find out about the challenges of living in the mangrove jungle.

A mangrove jungle



## Siscovery



People of the mangrove jungle

- Watch the first half of the video (until 1.00). Mark the sentences true (T) or false (F).
  - 1 In India, the River Ganges runs into the sea. T
  - 2 There are 1,000 islands in the Sunderbans.
  - 3 One of these islands is called Bali.
  - 4 Life is guite easy there.
  - 5 The people live off rice, fish and potatoes.
- 4 Watch the second half of the video. Put this information into the correct order.
  - a They decided to build a high wall to protect their homes.
  - **b** They ate the fish.
  - c They saw the sea level rise.
  - d They noticed a break in the wall.
  - e They worked for three hours to fix the break.
  - f They caught a lot of fish. 1
  - g They remembered that their village flooded years ago.
- 5 Watch the video again. Read Exercises 1 and 2 again. Are your answers the same now? How do the images show the positive and negative side of life in the mangrove jungle?

- 6 Test your memory. These sentences describe different images in the video, but each one has a mistake. Correct the false information. Then watch the video again to check your answers.
  - 1 There are dry rice fields.

    There are wet rice fields.
  - 2 There are four men on the boat.
  - 3 We see a half moon.
  - 4 There's a man carrying a lantern on his head.
- 7 What is life like in the Indian mangroves? Choose the best summary.
  - 1 Life is okay in the mangroves if you are careful.
  - 2 Life is very hard in the mangroves.
  - 3 Life is easy and relaxed in the mangroves.

## Your turn

8 Work with a partner. Is there any part of Romania like the mangroves? Is there an area surrounded by a lot of water? Would you like to live there? Why?/ Why not?

There are lots of towns on the river and they are sometimes flooded, so I wouldn't like to live there.



## Reading A magazine article

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photo below and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where do you think this place is?
  - 2 What do you think is special about it?
- Read the article and check your answers.
- 3 Read the article again and complete the information.

Approximate distance from the mainland: 4,000 km Official language:

Currency:

Weather:

Approximate distance from London:

Number of families:

Length of island:

Number of schools:

Month and year that the volcano erupted:

## **Explore** prepositional phrases

Find the phrases in the article and complete them using in or on.

1 *On* Earth **4** .... a ship 2 .... the middle **5** .... total 3 .... the planet 6 ... the island

Vocabulary bank • page 130

## Your turn

Work with a partner. Compare the life on islands like Bali and Tristan de Cunha. How are they similar?

> They are both islands and they are small communities.

> > Something bad happened on both islands – the volcano erupted on Tristan and there was flooding on Bali.

In the middle of the Atlantic Ocean, more than 4,000 km from the nearest land, is the remotest inhabited island on the planet - it is also a volcanic island. To get there, you need to travel for five or six days on a ship from Cape Town in South Africa.

Tristan da Cunha is a British territory, named after the Portuguese explorer who discovered the island. The official language is English, but London is almost 10,000 km away. The British monarch is the head of state and they use British pounds as their currency. Credit cards are not accepted, only hard currency.

Tristan da Cunha has a humid oceanic climate and no cold weather at all. The temperature is pleasant throughout the year, sometimes with heavy rainfall, with Sandy Point on the east coast known to be the warmest and driest place on the island.

The island is home to eighty families, about 250 people in total. The island is only 10 km long and there is one town with only one school. Internet access is limited and there's only one TV channel.

In October 1961, the island's volcano erupted and the whole population went to live in the UK. They got jobs and new homes, but they didn't like the lifestyle there and they missed their life on

> the island. They found it very hard to live in a society where money is the most important thing. So, in November 1962, they returned to Tristan da Cunha they were happier without television, cars and the stress of modern life!

> > FACT! Queen Mary's Peak, the 2000 metres high – and it's active!



#### Real talk: Which do you prefer - towns and cities or the countryside?



- 1 Watch the teenagers in the video. How many of them ...
  - a like the countryside? Three.
  - **b** like towns or cities?
  - c like both?

talk about?

Listen to Mark and Kate talking

about their town. What places do they

4 Complete the conversation with the phrases in the Useful language box.

#### **Useful language**

I (don't) think (so) .... Maybe, but .... I reckon .... I (don't) agree ....

Yes, I suppose so. OK, perhaps you're right, ....

Do you live near the school, Mark? Mark: No, I live in Chesterton. Do you know

it?

Kate: Yes, I live there too. I 1 think it's

a great place to live.

Mark: <sup>2</sup>... so! Nothing ever happens and

there's nothing to do. It's boring.

Kate: Well, I don't 3..... There are lots of things to do. What about the sports

centre and the youth club?

Mark: Maybe, 4.... all my friends live here in

town and I can't go out with them in

the evening.

OK, <sup>5</sup>.... right – that is a problem, but I Kate: 6.... Chesterton is healthier than town.

Mark: The air you mean? Yes, 7.... so. I like

taking my dog for walks in the country. Kate:

You see? Maybe living in a village isn't

all bad.

Mark: OK, perhaps you're 8...!

- Listen again and check your answers.
- Work with a partner. Practise the conversation in Exercise 4.

Which do you prefer – towns and cities or the countryside?

Work with a partner. Prepare a conversation like the one in Exercise 4. Use the photos below and the phrases in the Useful language box. Practise the conversation with your partner.

A Living in a city



**B** Going to a big school





## Writing An email to a friend

## 1 Look at the photos and read Artur's email to a pen friend. Where does Artur live?



## New mail +1

Hi.

Thanks for your email. It's great to hear from you!

I live in a small town in the north of Norway, called
Tromsø. It's a special place because in summer we
have 60 polar days. It never gets dark and we have the
midnight sun. I love summer!

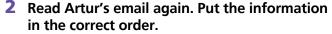
We do a lot of outdoor activities like trekking in the mountains, bike riding, concerts, boating, barbeques on the beach and sunbathing. We need the sun because in winter we have 60 polar nights when it's always dark! In winter, tourists come here to see the famous northern lights (the aurora borealis). They are amazing!

Where do you live? What do you do there?

Write back soon,

Best wishes,

Artur

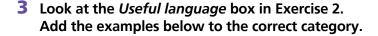


- closing the email
- a description of his town
- questions to his friend
- opening the email 1
- activities he does at different times of the year

## **Useful language**

We use special phrases to open and close an email to a friend:

- Opening an email: Thanks for your email. ...., .....
- Closing an email: Write back soon, Best wishes, ....,



How are you (and your family)? Thanks for all your news. Write back and tell me your news. It was great to get your email. Hope to hear from you soon.

Opening an email: How are you (and your family)?





## Get writing – Portfolio

#### PLAN

4 Plan an email to Artur describing where you live. Use Exercise 2 to help you and make notes.

#### WRITE

5 Write your email. Use your notes from Exercise 4 and the model text to help you.

#### CHECK

- 6 Can you say YES to these questions?
  - Is the information from Exercise 4 in your email?
  - Have you got opening and closing phrases in your email?



In this unit ...



Creepy creatures p25



Calendars of the ancient Maya p28



What are you afraid of? p30



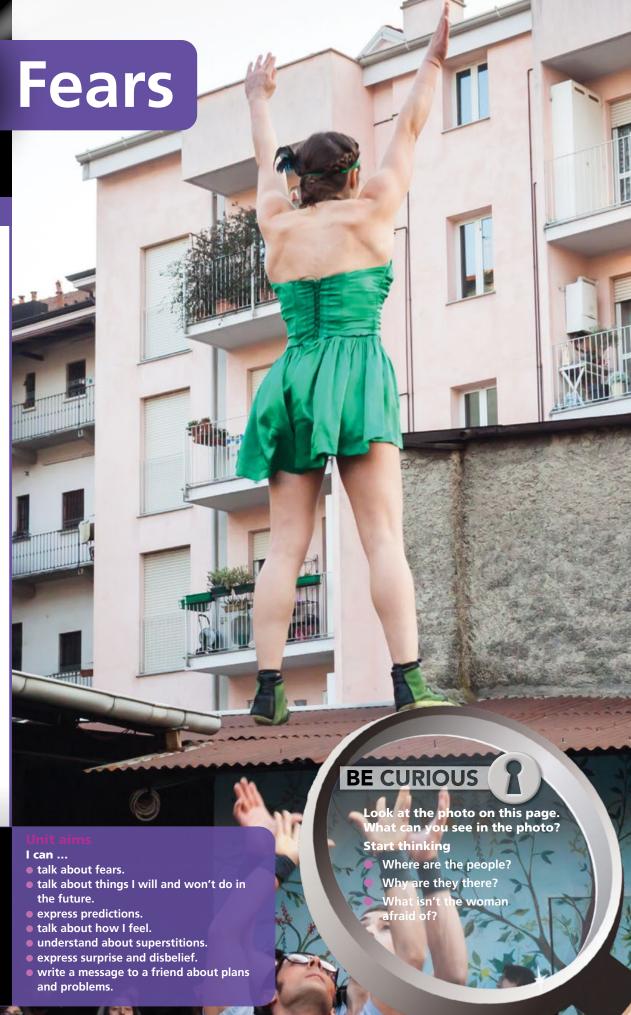
CLIL City or country p149

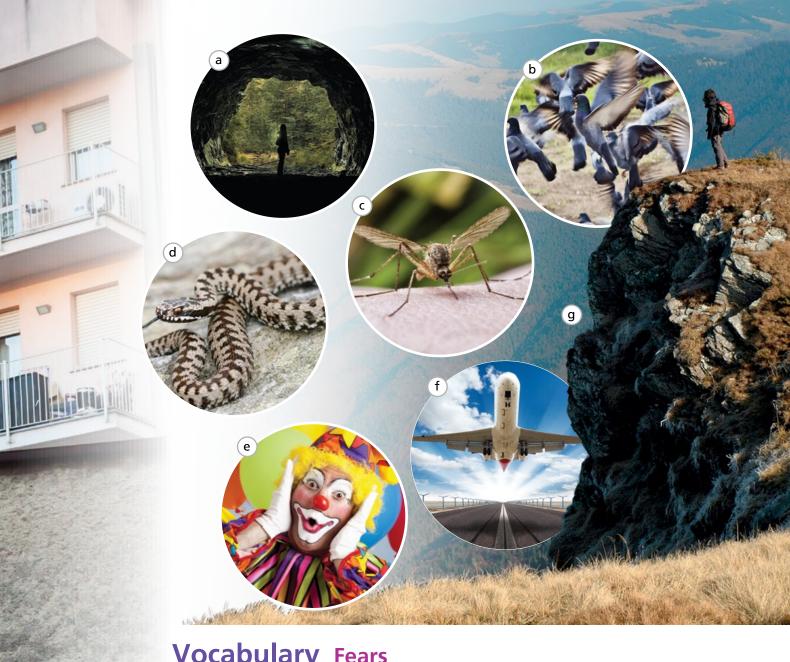
#### **Vocabulary**

- Fears
- Prepositional phrases
- Adjectives ending in -ed and -ing
- Opposites

#### **Language focus**

- be going to, will and present tenses for the future (review)
- Quantifiers (review)





## **Vocabulary Fears**

Match the words in the box with the photos of fears (a-g). Which word is not in the photos? Then listen, check and repeat.

flying heights the dark lifts insects birds clowns snakes

- a the dark
- - 1 birds

## Your turn

- **3** How afraid are you of the things in Exercise 1? Put them in order. Add one or two of your own fears to the list.
  - 1 heights

2 snakes

- 3 ...
- 4 Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Compare your list.
  - 1 Do you know anyone who has any of these fears or other common ones?
  - 2 How does the fear change his/her behaviour?

My mum has a fear of flying. She drives really long distances to avoid going on a plane!

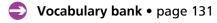
Vocabulary bank • page 131

## Reading An advice column

- 1 Look at the photos. What do you think the teenagers are afraid of?
- 2 Read the online advice column and check your answers.
- 3 Read the advice column again. Answer the questions.
  - 1 What is the difference between a fear and a phobia?
  - 2 Why does Isabella have to travel?
  - 3 What is Mary's advice to Isabella?
  - 4 Why does Kevin have to travel?
  - 5 What is Kevin worried about?
  - 6 What is Mary's advice to Kevin?

## Explore prepositional phrases

- 4 Look at the highlighted phrases in the text. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions after the verbs or adjectives.
  - 1 My mother's terrified of flying.
  - 2 I'm very worried .... going up in the lift.
  - 3 What do you think .... my new dress?
  - 4 Are you going to share the cake \_\_\_me?
  - 5 I'm a bit embarrassed ... my fear of insects.



#### **Get it right!**

Advice doesn't have a plural form and cannot be used with a or an. Maria gave good advice. ✓ Maria gave good advices. X Maria gave a good advice. X I have two pieces of advice for you. ✓ Let me give you some advice. ✓

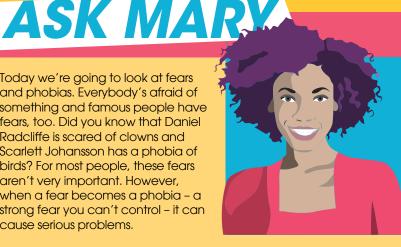
## Your turn

- 5 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - 1 Do you know of any other famous people who have fears or phobias? What are their fears?
  - 2 Do you think Mary gave good advice? Do you think it's easy to help people with phobias? Why?/Why not?

Yes, I think ... is afraid of ...

Yes, I think it's very/quite good because she ... No, I don't think it's very good because ... I think it's easy/difficult to help people with phobias because ...

Today we're going to look at fears and phobias. Everybody's afraid of something and famous people have fears, too. Did you know that Daniel Radcliffe is scared of clowns and Scarlett Johansson has a phobia of birds? For most people, these fears aren't very important. However, when a fear becomes a phobia - a strong fear you can't control - it can cause serious problems.





'My uncle's getting married next month and my parents and I are going to the wedding - in San Francisco! I'm terrified of flying and the flight takes four and a half hours. What am I going to do?'

Lots of people are afraid of flying. Jennifer Aniston, for example, hates planes, so you're in good company! Try to get some exercise before the flight so you'll feel tired and then you'll probably sleep on the plane. Listen to your favourite music. When you feel nervous, close your eyes and take long, deep breaths and you'll be fine!





'I can't sleep at night without a light. Next week, I'm travelling to London on a school trip and I'm going to share a room with other students. They'll definitely want to switch off the lights and I won't be able to sleep. I don't want them to think I'm a baby! Please help. I'm really worried about it!'

Don't be **embarrassed about** it. Did you know that Keanu Reeves is afraid of the dark? And no one says he's a baby! Don't worry about what other people will think of you. Just tell your roommates that you want a light on at night like it's the most normal thing in the world. They probably won't say anything about it.



**FACT!** Arachnophobia, the fear of spiders, is the most common phobia. Millions of people around the world suffer from it.



## Language focus 1 be going to, will and present tenses for the future (review)

## 1 Match the sentences from the text on page 24 with the uses (a–d).

- 1 I'm going to share a room with other students.
- 2 They probably won't say anything about it.
- 3 My uncle's getting married next month.
- 4 The flight takes four and a half hours.
  - a a definite arrangement
- **c** a prediction
- **b** a personal intention
- d a fixed schedule or timetable

### Grammar reference • page 121

## 

- 1 We aren't going to
- 2 Don't watch that film
- 3 Are you going
- 4 Alice is flying to Spain
- 5 John's afraid of the dark so
- 6 I'm seeing our teacher
- 7 Her birthday falls

- a to visit her aunty this summer.
- **b** he'll probably sleep with the light on.
- c take the lift.
- **d** to watch a horror film this evening?
- e on a Friday next year.
- f or you'll have nightmares.
- g at 4 p.m. about the school trip.

## 3 Ohoose the correct option to complete the conversation. Then listen and check.



## Your turn

## 4 Make notes about the questions below.

- 1 What job will you do when you're older?
- Will you still live in your town/ village?
- 3 When do you think you'll get married?
- **4** What are you doing after school today?
- 5 What are you going to do this weekend?
- **6** When do your school holidays start?
- **7** What are you going to do in the school holidays?
- 5 Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 4 with a partner. Use your notes to help you.

I think I'll be a doctor when I'm older.

I think I'll be a teacher, but I'm not sure yet.

I don't think I'll live in Albina. I'll move to Bucharest.

Sally: 1 Will you fly / Are you flying to San Francisco next week?

Isa: Yes, the taxi <sup>2</sup> will arrive / is arriving at

7 a.m.!

Sally: And <sup>3</sup> when is / is being the wedding?

It's on Thursday. We <sup>4</sup> are relaxing /
'Il probably relax on Wednesday – <sup>5</sup> I'm
going to go / I will go shopping with my
cousin in the day. Then in the evening,
my aunty has booked a restaurant and we
<sup>6</sup> will eat / are eating together at 8 p.m.

Sally: And after the wedding? <sup>7</sup> Will you / Are you going to stay in San Francisco for a holiday?

Isa: No, we <sup>8</sup> won't stay / aren't staying very long – our flight back <sup>9</sup> is leaving / leaves on Saturday morning.

#### Learn about a scary animal.

- What do you think is the scariest animal and how do you feel about it?
- What animal is the man trying to catch?
- How does the man catch it?





**Creepy creatures** 

## **Listening** Conversations between friends

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photo of the roller coaster and answer the questions.
  - 1 How do you think the people on the roller coaster are feeling?
  - 2 The ride is called *The Scream Machine*. Why do you think so?
  - 3 Do you like roller coasters? Why/Why not?



- 3 Listen again. Choose the correct answers.
  Conversation 1
  - 1 Which ride is Anita scared of?
    - (a) The Scream Machine.
    - **b** The Colossus.
    - c The Tidal Wave.
  - 2 How does Bruno feel about The Tidal Wave?
    - a He's terrified.
    - **b** He's worried.
    - c He's relaxed.
  - 3 Why does Claudia suggest starting with The Scream Machine?
    - a The queue is short.
    - **b** It's very scary.
    - c It's lots of fun.

#### Conversation 2

- 4 What was Claudia's favourite ride?
  - a The Colossus.
  - **b** The Tidal Wave.
  - **c** The Scream Machine.
- 5 What is the problem at the end of the day?
  - a They miss the bus home.
  - **b** They've spent a lot of money.
  - c They can't get anything to eat.

## **Vocabulary** -ed and -ing adjectives





I'm terrified.

It's terrifying.

- 1 I'm really bored boring. There's nothing to do!
- 2 The film we saw last night was terrified / terrifying!
- 3 Yesterday we looked at the physics of roller coasters in class. It was very **interested** / **interesting**.
- 4 We took my little cousins to a theme park at the weekend. They were really excited / exciting!
- 5 Yesterday we went on a 20-kilometre walk in the country. It was really tired / tiring!
- 6 I'm a bit worried / worrying. I have to give a presentation to the whole class tomorrow!

#### Get it right!

*I'm bored*. = how we feel

It's boring. = something that causes that feeling We use in with interested and of with afraid/scared/frightened/terrified.

I'm very interested **in** snakes. Anita's terrified **of** roller coasters.

## Your turn

- 5 Complete the sentences so that they're true for you.
  - 1 I'm really interested in ...
  - 2 Today was really tiring because ...
  - 3 I'm excited about ...
  - 4 ... is boring because ...
  - 5 I think ... is/are terrifying because ...
  - 6 I'm worried about ...

I'm really interested in fashion.

**6** Work with a partner. Compare your sentences.

I'm really interested in fashion.

I don't think fashion is very interesting. I'm really interested in music.

Vocabulary bank • page 131



## Language focus 2 Quantifiers (review)

- 1 Complete the examples from the listening on page 26. Then complete the rules.
  - 1 There are <u>too many</u> people. Look at the queue!
  - 2 There's .... time to do everything. Don't worry about the queues.
  - **3** How .... loops has it got?
  - 4 We spent .... much money.
  - 5 I'm hungry. **How** .... money have we got?
  - 1 We use .... much/many to say an amount is excessive.
  - 2 We use .... much/many to ask about quantity.
  - **3** We use .... to say the amount is sufficient.
- Grammar reference page 121
- 2 Choose the correct words.
  - 1 There weren't **enough/ much** rides.
  - We didn't go on everything. There were too much / too many rides.
  - 3 How much / How many money did you spend at the park?
  - 4 There weren't any shops and there weren't many / much restaurants either.
  - 5 Did you have **enough / too many** time to go on all the rides?

#### a little/a few

- 3 Complete the examples from the listening on page 26. Then choose the word to complete the rule.
  - 1 There are only ... people in the queue.
  - **2** We've got .... time before the bus comes.

We use a *little* and a *few* to express **big** / **small** quantities.

- Grammar reference page 121
- 4 Complete the sentences using a few or a little.
  - 1 We've got <u>a few</u> minutes before it opens.
  - 2 There's ... pizza left. Do you want it?
  - 3 Look! I took ... photos at the park.
  - 4 I've only got .... pocket money.
  - **5** We met .... friends at the park.

5 Occuplete the conversation with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

too much a few how many enough a little how much (x2) too many not much



- A: Let's go on the roller coaster again.
- **B:** I don't think so. There's <sup>1</sup> *not much* time before the bus comes.
- A: But it's so amazing!
- **B:** <sup>2</sup>.... times do you want to go on it?
- A: Well, OK, have we got 3.... money to get a hot dog?
- **B**: <sup>4</sup>... are they?
- A: They're £2 each.
- **B:** Let's see. Yes, and we've got 5... money left for something else!
- A: Let's buy some more ice cream.
- **B:** More? <sup>6</sup>... ice cream can you eat?
- A: I can never eat 7... ice cream!
- **B:** I'm so tired. Let's sit down here for <sup>8</sup>... minutes. I hope there aren't <sup>9</sup>... people on the bus I don't want to stand all the way home.
- Say it right! page 116

## Your turn

- 6 Make notes about the questions below.
  - 1 Have you ever been to a theme park? Did you like it?
  - Were there a lot of rides? Did you have enough time to go on all of them?
  - 3 Were there a lot of people?
  - 4 What rides were you afraid of at the park?
- 7 Ask and answer with a partner about a theme park. Use your notes in Exercise 6 to help you.

I went to a theme park called ... last summer. It was great.



- 2 Watch the first part of the video (to 1.14) and check your answers.
- Watch the first part of the video again and answer the questions.
  - 1 What question did the Maya think they could answer?
  - 2 Why do scientists study the Mayan calendar?
- 4 Watch the next part of the video and complete the text.

The calendar had  $18 \frac{1}{...}$  months of 20 days each, a total of  $\frac{2}{...}$  days.

Then there were five 3... days, a total of 4... days.

The calendar was very important. There are 365 5... in the Kukulcan Temple: one for each day of the solar 6....



- 5 Test your visual memory. Put these images in the correct order.
  - a The Imix and Cimi symbols.
  - **b** The sun setting over a river.
  - **c** The moon passing above a palace.
  - d A view of a Mayan temple and beach. 1

6 What do you remember about the calendar? Choose the correct word.

Imix was a 'good' bad day. They planned to do 'enjoyable / important things, like planting on these days. Cimi was a 'good' bad day. Its symbol was the 'closed' open eye of a dead person. <sup>5</sup> Everything / Nothing important happened on these days.

7 Watch the whole video again and check your answers to Exercises 5 and 6.

## Your turn

- 8 Work with a partner. Answer the questions.
  - 1 Do you think it's possible to predict good days and bad days? Why?/ Why not?
  - 2 What's a good day for you? What's a bad day? Why? What kinds of things happen?
  - A: I think it's impossible, you never know what's going to happen.
  - B: I think the weather's important if it's sunny, it could be a good day.

Superstitions?
Who needs them!

Superstitions have been around for thousands of years. A lot of people never walk under ladders or they believe that black cats bring **good** (or bad) luck. Some people think one magpie is bad luck, but two together is good luck. Other superstitions are more modern, like football players who don't change their socks or who always enter the pitch with their right foot.

Lots of people, however, strongly believe that superstitions are **silly**. They say that superstitions are based on **old** habits, customs or beliefs. How could you have bad luck by opening an umbrella inside? Why is the number thirteen more **dangerous** than other numbers?

To prove their point, they have 'Anti-Superstition Parties', usually on Friday the thirteenth, a date that many people think brings bad luck. At these parties, people break mirrors and dance with open umbrellas. And nothing bad happens! Peter Moore, a dentist, has been to several anti-superstition parties. He says, 'People must be crazy to believe that the number seven is **lucky** or that they could be more **successful** by putting a horseshoe outside their house.' Chelsea Evans, a chef, agrees. 'I love the parties. I've broken lots of mirrors and my life is going well!'

**FACT!** Fear of the number 13 is called Triskaidekaphobia and fear of Friday the Thirteenth is called Friggatriskaidekaphobia.



- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos showing superstitions. What do you think the superstitions are?
- Read the article and check your answers. Have you got the same superstitions in Romania?
- 3 Read the article again. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false ones.
  - 1 All superstitions have a modern origin.
    F Some superstitions date back to ancient times.
  - 2 Some superstitions come from modern beliefs.
  - 3 Some football players wear two socks on one foot.
  - 4 Anti-superstition parties are for people who believe in superstitions.
  - **5** At anti-superstition parties, people don't follow any superstitions.
  - 6 Peter and Chelsea are scared to go to anti-superstition parties.



- Look at the highlighted adjectives in the text. Match them to the opposite adjectives below.
  - 1 safe *dangerous*
- 4 unlucky
- 2 unsuccessful
- 5 bad
- 3 modern
- 6 sensible
- 😜 Vocabulary bank page 131

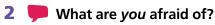
## Your turn

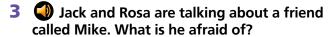
- Write about three superstitions in Romania.
  - There are a lot of/a few/not many superstitions in Romania. Some people believe/think/say that ... are lucky.
- 6 Work with a partner. Talk about superstitions. Do you believe that people can create their own luck?



#### Real talk: What are you afraid of?

- 1 Watch the teenagers in the video. How many teenagers ...
- a are afraid of animals? 2
- **b** say they are not afraid of anything?
- c are afraid of other things (not animals)?







4 Complete the conversation with the phrases in the *Useful language* box.

#### **Useful language**

What? That can't be true! You're joking! That's impossible! I don't believe you/it! Are you serious? No way!

Rosa: Is Mike going to come sailing with us?

**Jack:** No <sup>1</sup> way ! He's terrified of deep water.

Rosa: <sup>2</sup>....? That's <sup>3</sup>....! He's a really good swimmer!

**Jack:** No, it's true. He's got a phobia.

**Rosa:** That <sup>4</sup>....true! He's competing in the 50 metre freestyle at the swimming club next week.

Jack: I know, but he's scared of swimming in

open water. I think it's because you can't see

the bottom.

Rosa: 5... serious? I didn't think Mike was scared of

anything.

Jack: Well, he's afraid of deep water. It's quite a

common phobia, actually.

Rosa: You're 6....! I've never heard of it.

Jack: Mike told me himself.

Rosa: I don't 7.... you! I'm going to call Mike and

ask him.

- 5 **(1)** Listen again and check your answers.
- 6 Work with a partner. Practise the conversation in Exercise 4.
- Work with a partner. Prepare a conversation like the one in Exercise 4. Use the photos below and the useful language. Practise the conversation with your partner.

#### Situation 1

You are going camping with some friends. Your friend Kevin has a phobia of spiders. He goes walking a lot and loves sport.



#### Situation 2

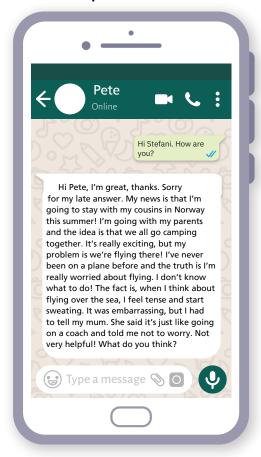
You are going to go on a school trip to Rome. Your friend Donna is terrified of the dark. She is usually a confident person and speaks Italian!





## Writing A message to a friend

1 Look at the photo and read Stefani's message. What is she worried about?





- 2 Read Stefani's message again. Put the information she writes about in order.
  - explain the problem
  - open message and apologise for responding late
  - write about who she has spoken to about it
  - describe how she feels and why
  - ask for advice
  - give news and explain her plans

## **Useful language**

#### Introducing news and explaining things

We can use different phrases to introduce what we want to say.

- My news is (that) ...
- ... the idea is (that) ...
- 3 Look at the *Useful language* box. Find two other examples of introducing something in the message.
- 4 Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.
  - 1 We're moving to Germany. (our news)

    Our news is that we're moving to Germany.
  - **2** We stay there for two years. (the idea)
  - 3 She doesn't want to go. (the truth)
  - 4 A lot of people have this phobia. (the fact)
  - 5 They visit me next year. (the idea)
  - 6 I've got a dog. (my big news)

## Get writing – Portfolio

#### PLAN

5 Plan a message to a friend with your news and explain a problem you have. Make notes on the things in Exercise 2.

#### WRITE

6 Write your message. Use your notes from Exercise 5 and the model text to help you.

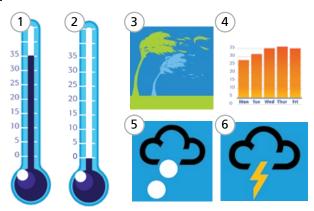
#### CHECK

- 7 Can you say YES to these questions?
  - Is the information from Exercise 2 in your message?
  - Have you used expressions like My news is that ... in your message?



## Vocabulary

1 Write the extreme weather words for each picture.



#### 1 boiling

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

sleeping bag camera first aid kit penknife <del>sun cream</del> compass torch

- 1 You need *sun cream* to protect your skin against sunburn.
- 2 You need a ... to find your way in the dark.
- 3 You need a warm ... if you're camping.
- 4 You need a .... to find the correct direction.
- 5 You need a .... in case you get hurt.

#### **3** Match the sentences to the fears in the box.

birds clowns lifts flying the dark snakes

- 1 I prefer taking the bus or train. *flying*
- 2 I'll take the stairs.
- 3 I don't like them flying near me.
- 4 They can be poisonous and they move quickly.
- 5 They look frightening with their face and hair different colours.
- 6 Can you leave the light on?

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct adjective form of the words in brackets.

- 1 Matthew feels really *tired* (tire).
- 2 Their new computer game is really .... (excite).
- 3 The TV programme was so .... (bore). I fell asleep.
- **4** Jason saw a spider and he was really .... (terrify).
- **5** Harry's book is really .... (interest).
- 6 Julie's test is tomorrow. She feels very .... (worry).

## Explore vocabulary

5 Complete the text with the words in the box.

in sub-zero conditions on (x2) rises falls catch of



#### When should I travel to New Zealand?

You may think that New Zealand is one of the warmest places ¹.on. the planet, but New Zealand is full ²....surprises! In summer, the temperature ³....to an average maximum temperature of between 20 and 30°C, but the temperature ⁴.... as you travel south. While the far north has subtropical weather during summer, inland alpine areas of South Island can experience ⁵.... as low as −10°C in winter. So wrap up warm if you don't want to 6.... a cold! One year the people 7.... the island experienced 40 centimetres of snow 8.... total in one night.

## 6 Complete the sentences with *of*, *about* or *with*. Then write the opposite adjective of each underlined word.

- 1 Is that lift <u>safe</u>? I'm terrified <u>of</u> small spaces. <u>dangerous</u>
- 2 What do you think .... this <u>old</u> mobile phone? It's enormous!
- 3 A: Ana won't share her <u>lucky</u> objects ... me.
  B: Well, you should find your own lucky things!
- 4 I'm really worried .... the exam. I saw a black cat too and that's bad luck!
- A: Are you dressing up for the party?
   B: No, I'm proud ... my new shirt and I think fancy dress looks silly.



## 1 Complete the sentences with the present continuous or present simple of the verbs in the box.

read do not stay rain get study stay

- 1 We are studying Japanese at school this term.
- 2 .... they .... a test right now?
- 3 They .... up late if they have school the next day.
- 4 It's nearly the end of September and the weather colder.
- 5 What book ... you ... at the moment?
- 6 I prefer to \_\_\_indoors when it's cold.
- 7 It hardly ever ... in winter.
- 8 You look tired. ... you ... enough sleep?

## 2 Complete the sentences and questions with the verbs in brackets. Use the past continuous or past simple.

- 1 I <u>saw</u> (see) sharks when I <u>was swimming</u> (swim) in the ocean.
- 2 Jake ....(climb) in the mountains when he .... (drop) his camera.
- 3 They .... (walk) in the desert when they .... (find) a huge cave.
- 4 What ....you ....(do) when I ....(phone) you yesterday?
- 5 It .... (not rain) when we .... (start) hiking.
- 6 Where ... you ... (jog) when you ... (lose) your mobile?

## 3 Complete the sentences with *be going to, will,* present simple or present continuous.

- 1 He *is flying* (fly) to Japan tomorrow.
- 2 Don't worry. He .... probably .... (call) you later.
- 3 My parents .... (take) me out for dinner on Saturday for my birthday.
- 4 What .... (you/do) when you leave school?
- 5 The train ... (arrive) at 8.30 p.m.
- 6 Sorry, but we .... (not see) you later we have got a party to go to.
- **7** Susan .... (start) a new job on Monday.
- 8 When his birthday (fall) next year?

#### 4 Choose the correct words.

I had a terrible time at the concert last weekend.

There were ¹ too much / too many people and there was ² too much / too many noise. There wasn't ³ enough / a few space in the hall and I felt quite scared. There were only ⁴ a few / a little windows and they were closed. I felt sick and I needed ⁵ a few / a little time to sit down and recover. There weren't ⁶ too many / enough chairs to sit on so luckily ¹ a few / too many friends helped me. One friend asked me, '8 How many / How much concerts have you been to?' 'Lots!' I told her.

## Language builder

## 5 Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

Sylvia: Hi, Kylie! ½ your homework?
Kylie: No, I²... at my photos from my holiday.
Sylvia: I³... that too. ⁴... have fun on your holiday?
Kylie: Yes! We⁵... to the mountains. One day, while we ⁶..., some wild deer 7... up to us to find food.
Sylvia: Amazing! I want to go hiking next summer holiday. What 8... take with me?
Kylie: Well you 9... take anything too heavy. You 10... take a map because that's on your smartphone. But you 11... watch out for snakes.

Sylvia: Snakes? I don't like snakes!

1 a Do you do **b** Are you doing c Do you doing 2 a am look **b** looking c am looking 3 a usually do **b** do usually c am usually doing a You did **b** Did you **c** Were you a went c were going **b** go a hiked **b** were hiking c hike 7 a come **b** were coming c came a I should **b** should I c do I should c shouldn't a should **b** must 10 a have to **b** don't have to c should 11 a must **b** shouldn't c don't have to

## Speaking

#### 6 Match the sentences.

- 1 I think this city is a great place to live! c
- 2 Can I ask you something?
- 3 Maybe living in a village isn't all bad.
- 4 I reckon that this town is really boring.
- **5** Are you serious?
- 6 I don't believe you!
- a Well, why don't you ask him.
- **b** OK, perhaps you're right.
- **c** I agree. There are lots of things to do here.
- **d** I disagree. There are lots of things to do here.
- e Yes, she's afraid of spiders.
- f Yeah, sure. What's up?



## Language focus

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the present simple or present continuous tense.
  - 1 I <u>'m spending</u> (spend) the whole day at home today.
  - 2 How often .... (you / go) to the gym?
  - 3 I....(not enjoy) this film. It's terrible! Can we watch a different one?
  - 4 Carla .... (teach) Spanish at the local school every Tuesday and Friday.
  - 5 Don't go upstairs! Your father .... (have) a rest.
  - 6 My brother .... (study) really hard, so he always does well at school.
- Write the sentences with the adverbs in the correct places.
  - 1 I go to the swimming pool. (often / on Saturday mornings)
    - I often go to the swimming pool on Saturday mornings.
  - 2 We go to the gym. (usually / three times a week)
  - 3 You try to do your best. (always)
  - 4 I am at home in summer. (hardly ever)
  - **5** We go away in winter. (sometimes)
  - 6 I go out with my friends. (usually / at the weekend)

## 3 Write full sentences with these words. Use the past simple and past continuous tense.

- 1 Ben / have / breakfast / when / his friend / arrive Ben was having breakfast when his friend arrived.
- 2 I / leave / the house when it / start / to rain
- 3 What/you/do/when/I/call?
- 4 We / go / to the station / when / the storm / start
- 5 Sarah / jog / when / she / fall over
- 6 I / not / watch / TV / when / Mum / come home

\_\_\_\_/ 5

4 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the past simple or past continuous tense.

Hi! I'm Alex, and last week I ¹ went. (go) on a trip into the countryside with my family. We decided to cycle so that we ² ... (not have to) carry our heavy bags. We set off very early. We ³ ... (cycle) up a hill when Mum remembered that our picnic lunches ⁴ ... (be) still in the fridge! So we stopped at a small shop and ⁵ ... (buy) some food and drink. But while we ⁶ ... (sit) on the grass with our food, it suddenly started to rain. Mum and Dad decided we should just go home after that!

## Vocabulary

5 Write five words about the weather. Then use each word in a sentence.

Rain. I think it's going to rain today.

\_\_\_\_/ 5

6 Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.

Last weekend, I went camping with some friends

1..... the middle of an island. Of course, you should
never go camping without a 2.... in case you want to
cut something, and a 3.... in case you need to see at
night. But last weekend, I forgot both! I also forgot
our 4..... so we got very thirsty. Luckily, however,
I remembered my 5.... so I could see clearly! It was
the end of spring, when temperatures start to 6.....
there, so it was getting quite hot.

		_	_	•		
1	а	in	b	on	C	at
2	а	first aid kit	b	compass	C	penknife
3	а	torch	b	map	C	sleeping
						bag
4	а	glasses	b	water bottle	C	sun cream
5	а	contact lenses	b	tent	C	camera
6	а	fall	b	melt	C	rise
						/ 5

## Writing

- 7 Write an email to your new pen friend (about 80–100 words) inviting him/her to the city where you live. Use the questions below to help you.
  - Where do you live?
  - What do you like about your city?
  - What do you enjoy doing there?
  - What don't you like about your city?



\_\_/ 15

Granted points 5/5

/ 50



# **Evaluation test**



# Language focus

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use will or going to.

come play not be meet join not go

- 1 <u>Is Jack going to come</u> (Jack) into town with us tonight?
- 2 I .... probably .... John outside the cinema at about six o'clock, as usual.
- 3 Sarah .... to London with her grandparents after all, because she's not well.
- 4 My brothers .... the gym because they want to get fit.
- **5** Experts say there .... any cars in our town by 2050!
- **6** ....(you) football this weekend?

\_\_\_\_/ 5

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use will, going to, present simple or present continuous.
  - 1 My parents <u>are meeting</u> (meet) me at the airport when the plane lands.
  - 2 Don't go into town on the bus it takes ages and you .... (be) late.
  - 3 Ben and Clare .... (get) married next month.
  - 4 Look at all the dark clouds in the sky! It .... (rain).
  - **5** What time .... their flight to Seoul .... (leave)?
  - 6 I probably .... (watch) TV tonight when I get home I'm too tired.
- 3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

a few a little <del>enough</del> how many too much too many

- 1 There isn't <u>enough</u> fruit to make a fruit salad. We need to buy more.
- 2 There's .... salt in this soup. It's awful!
- 3 Lisa, ... students are there in your class?
- 4 There are .... good cafés near Peter's house. Let's go to one.
- **5** I've only got .... money with me.
- 6 There were .... people on the bus home and we couldn't find a seat.

/ 5

#### **Self-evaluation**

• The most important thing I learned in Units 1–2 is .....

- I liked ... the most.
- It was quite difficult for me to .....

#### 4 Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.

It 1....my birthday next week and 2....a party. I'm 3....buy a lot of food for my party because only ten people 4..... I hope we 5....enough sandwiches and pizza for everyone, as I don't want anyone to be hungry. Last year, we had 6....sandwiches and cakes so we had to throw a lot of them away!

1 a 's going to be b 's c will be

2 a I'm goingb I will havec I'm having3 a going tob not going toc won't

**a** are coming **b** will come **c** going to come

**5** a won't have **b** are having **c** will have

a a few **b** too many **c** enough

\_\_\_\_/5

# Vocabulary

- 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Use -ed or -ing adjectives.
  - 1 Walking round town all day yesterday was really exhausting (exhaust).
  - 2 The film we saw yesterday was .... (terrify). I couldn't sleep afterwards.
  - 3 I was so .... (bore) that I fell asleep during the lesson.
  - 4 I'm really .... (excite) because it's my birthday.
  - 5 I'm reading an .... (interest) book about Spanish history at the moment.
  - 6 I can't find my mobile phone anywhere. It's really .... (worry).
- 6 Write five words about fears. Then use each word in a sentence.

Heights. Don't go up the tower if you're afraid of heights.

\_\_\_\_/ 5

# Writing

- Write an email to a friend (about 80–100 words) explaining something that you have a problem with. Use the questions to help you.
  - What is the problem?
  - How do you feel about it and why?
  - Have you done anything about it?
  - What do your friends and family think?

/ 15

Granted points 5/5

\_\_\_\_/ 50

Total:



In this unit ...



The women of Ayoquesco p39



Playing with Maths **p42** 



Asking for advice p44



CLIL Social media p150

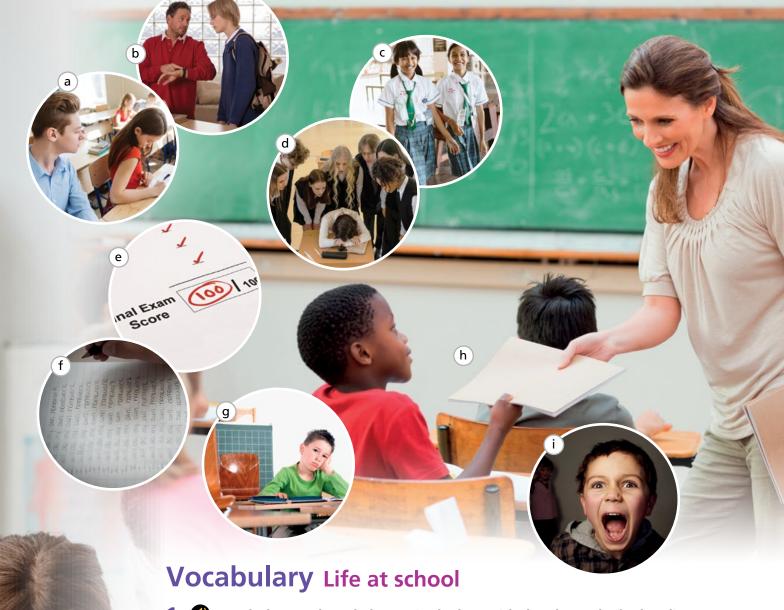
#### Vocabulary

- Behaviour and discipline at school
- Words from the text
- make vs. do
- Phrasal verbs (1)

### Language focus

- Second conditional: affirmative vs. negative statements, yes/no questions
- Second conditional: Wh- questions
- need/needn't; should/ shouldn't





1 Match the words and phrases in the box with the photos (a–i). Then listen, check and repeat.

bullying hand in homework get detention cheat in a test be on time wear a uniform write lines scream or shout get good marks

- a cheatinatest
- 2 Look again at the phrases in Exercise 1. Which are bad or good behaviours and which are rules or punishments?

good behaviours: hand in homework

wear a uniform, ...

### Your turn

- 4 Work with a partner. Answer the questions.
  - 1 Do you wear a uniform in your school? Why/Why not?
  - **2** What do you think of cheating in tests?
  - 3 Do you think your school is strict? Why/Why not?

We don't have to wear a uniform because ...

I think cheating is bad because ...

Our school is very strict because we always have to ...

**○ Vocabulary bank •** page 132

# Reading A student blog

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photo below and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where are the children?
  - 2 Who are they?
  - 3 What do you think they're discussing?
- Read the article about a school in New York. In what ways is it different from other schools?
- 3 Read the article again. Mark the sentences true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.
  - 1 The school has meetings every month.

    F The school has meetings every week.
  - **2** The students make suggestions and the teachers vote on their suggestions.
  - 3 There are no rules.
  - 4 The students can't choose their own subjects.
  - 5 The teachers don't tell the students what to do.
  - 6 Working in a team is very important at the Free School.

#### Get it right!

We use the infinitive after want.

If you want to talk, you have to put up your hand.

I don't want to do the exam tomorrow!

## Explore words in context

4 Match the words and phrases from the article with the definitions (1–5) below.

propose <del>vote</del> walk out on our own together

- 1 choose *vote*
- 2 alone without other people
- 3 the opposite of alone
- 4 make a suggestion
- 5 leave a room without asking for permission

### Your turn

- 5 Answer the questions. Make notes.
  - 1 Would you like to go to a school like the Brooklyn Free School? Why/Why not?
  - 2 What rules would you change in your school? Why?
  - 3 What subjects would you like to study that you don't already study? Why?

#### 6 Discuss your answers in groups.

I'd really like/love/hate to go to a school like this. I'd like to change the rule about ... because it's ... I'd really like to study .... I think it's important/interesting because ...

# **BROWN'S FREE SCHOOL**

×

# This week's student blogger is a new student, Jacklyn Whyte.

A lot of people are asking me about my new school. It's really hard to explain, so I give them an example of one day.

It's Wednesday morning and it's time for the weekly school meeting. This week, one of the topics is 'wheels'. Kyle, one of the kids in my class, proposes a new rule that students can bring skateboards, skates and bicycles to school. Our teacher, Mr Jackson, suggests that we do this one day a week and the whole school votes on a 'wheels' day for next Friday.

If I wanted to change the rules at my old school, it wouldn't be that easy! But here at the Brown's Free School, things are different. Here, we make the decisions! We can decide to go to class, watch TV or play a computer game, but most students choose to go to class – it's more interesting! When we don't like a class, we just walk out! In my old school, if I didn't stay until the end of a class, I'd be in detention!

At the Free School, the teachers don't give detention, and no one writes lines. There's no uniform and there are no exams. We choose what we want to study and how. We can work in groups or study on our own. If you were at the school and you wanted to study car mechanics, our teachers would help you find a way to study it. If you wanted to start a new school magazine, you would suggest it to the teachers. Then, they would find a way to help you do it.

That's how the Free School works. The ideas come from the students and everyone works together to make them happen. It's a great experience and I love going to the Free School!

add a comment | send a message





# Language focus 1 Second conditional

1 Complete the examples from the text on page 38. Then complete the rules.

imaginary situation	possible consequence
If I until the end of a class, If you to start a new school magazine,	Iin detention!  youit to the teachers.

- 1 We use ....+ past simple and ....+ infinitive to form the second conditional.
- 2 We use the second conditional to talk about unreal or impossible situations in the present or future / past.

Watch out! Pay attention to the sequence of tenses:

- conditional clause: if + past simple;
- main clause: the auxiliary verb *would* + the base form of the verb.

We use *would* in the main clause, not in the conditional clause.

- Grammar reference page 122
- 2 **O** Look at the chart in Exercise 1. Choose the correct form of the verbs in the sentences below.
  - 1 If I was / 'd be rude to a teacher, I got / 'd get detention.
  - 2 If I didn't / wouldn't pass my exams, my parents didn't / wouldn't be very happy!
  - 3 If a teacher gave / would give me lines, I wrote / 'd write them during the break.
  - 4 My teacher called / would call my parents if I didn't / wouldn't go to school.
  - 5 My friends did / would like to go to the Free School if they opened / would open one in our town.



# **3** Write second conditional sentences using the prompts.

- 1 If I / go / to the Free School / not study Maths If I went to the Free School, I wouldn't study Maths.
- 2 If I / not do homework / my teacher / give detention
- 3 If I / not study English / not know / how to do this exercise
- 4 I / tell / my parents / if / there / be / bullying in my school
- 5 I/do/Art in class/if/have the choice
- 6 I/not get/good marks/if/not study every day
- Say it right! page 116

### Your turn

4 Read the quiz and choose answers for you.

- If I came home late one night, ...
  - my parents would be very angry.
  - b my parents wouldn't say anything.
  - c I'd get some kind of punishment.
- 2 If I was rude to one of my parents, ...
  - I'd feel bad and I'd say sorry immediately.
  - b they'd be very shocked because I'm never rude.
  - they'd punish me with no TV or computer for a week.
- If I borrowed something from my brother/sister/ friend without asking, ...
  - a it wouldn't be a problem. They do it to me all the time!
  - b they'd tell my parents and I'd get into a lot of trouble!
  - I'd put it back before they noticed.
- 5 Compare your quiz answers with a partner.

If I came home late, I'd get some kind of punishment. I wouldn't go out for two or three weeks.

#### Learn about a successful business.

- What happened in Ayoquezco in 1979?
- What do people use prickly pear for?
- What did the women decide to do?





The women of Ayoquezco

# **Listening A discussion**

1 Listen to the quiz. Put the pictures in the correct order.



# 2 Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 If Mick saw a classmate cheating in an exam, he would ...
  - a say nothing and just continue with his work.
  - **b** tell a teacher.
  - c try to cheat as well.
- 2 If Suzy found a wallet full of money on the street near her school, she would ...
  - a take it to the nearest police station.
  - **b** give it to a teacher at the school.
  - c keep it.
- 3 What is Mick more careful about now?
  - a Not losing his mobile phone.
  - **b** What he tells his dad.
  - **c** Who he gives his phone number to.
- 4 If someone sent Suzy some horrible messages on her phone she would ...
  - a show them to her parents.
  - **b** do nothing.
  - c tell the police.

# Work with a partner. Discuss what you would do in the situations in Exercise 3.



# Vocabulary make vs. do (review)

4 Match the words in the box to the verbs, *make* or *do*. Then listen, check and repeat.

your homework a mistake friends a noise an exercise a phone call something interesting a mess the right thing a decision

do your homework .... make a mistake ....

**○ Vocabulary bank •** page 132

### Your turn – An investigation

- 5 Complete the questions with the correct verb *make* or *do*, then answer the questions. Make notes.
  - 1 Do you find it easy to *make* friends?
  - 2 How many hours of homework do you .... every week?
  - 3 How do you feel when you .... a mistake in class?
  - 4 Does your mum get angry with you when you .... a mess in your room?
  - 5 I have to ... a phone call.
- 6 Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 5 with a partner.

I find it easy to make friends because I'm not very shy.

7 Work in groups. Do a survey based on the questions in Exercise 5. Report your group's information to the class.

#### Check your results!

Through this activity you were able to:

- answer the questions clearly and correctly.
- follow the steps given. □
- work in a team. 🗖



# Language focus 2 Second conditional questions

#### 1 Complete the examples from the listening on page 40.

#### **Wh-** questions

What **would** you do **if** you saw someone cheating? **If** you found a wallet, what .... you do?

#### Yes/No questions

....someone **sent** you horrible messages on your phone, would you tell a teacher?

Would you tell your parents if you failed an exam?

#### **Short answers**

Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they would. No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they wouldn't.

### Grammar reference • page 122

# 2 **\( \Omega\)** Look at the chart in Exercise 1. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 What did /would you do if youwere/ would be the head teacher of your school?
- 2 If your best friend didn't / wouldn't invite you to his/her birthday, what did / would you say?
- 3 If your family lived / would live in an English-speaking country, did / would your lives be very different?
- 4 What job did / would your teacher do if he/she wasn't / wouldn't be a teacher?
- 5 If your grandparents lived / would live in the USA, did / would you go to visit them?

# 3 Ocomplete the conversation with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check.

- **A:** Can I ask you a few questions?
- **B**: Yes, sure.
- A: OK, first question: what <sup>1</sup> would you ... (do) if you <sup>2</sup> ... (win) a TV talent show?
- **B**: I think I'd have a huge party with my friends and family!
- A: And if you <sup>3</sup> ... (have) a party, where <sup>4</sup> ... you .... (have) it?
- B: I'd definitely have it on a beach, if I could!
- A: OK, second question. If you 5....(can) be famous, what 6.... you ....(be)?
- B: I don't know. I'd like to be a singer maybe.
- A: OK. Last question. If you 7....(not have to) go to school, what 8....you ....(do) all day?
- **B:** That's easy! I'd play my guitar, listen to music and sleep!



### Your turn

# 4 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- 1 If you had a million pounds, what would you buy?
- 2 If you ruled the world, what would you change?
- 3 If you didn't have to go to school, what would you do all day?
- 4 If you could learn a musical instrument, which would it be?

Let me think. OK, if I had a million pounds, I'd buy a really big house by the sea!

# ▶ need/needn't for talking about necessity/ obligation; should/ shouldn't for making recommendations/ giving advice

#### 5 Complete the examples from the listening on page 40. Then complete the rules.

- 1 I really .... do well in my exam this week.
- 2 I .... tell them about this because they would notice.
- 3 I think you .... tell them that what they did was wrong.
- 1 We use .... to show that we should do something that is important to us.
- **2** We use .... to show that there is no obligation or necessity to do something.
- 3 We use .... to make recommendations or give advice, to say something is/isn't a good idea.

#### 6 Complete the sentences with should/shouldn't or need/needn't and the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I really <u>should change</u> (change) the way I speak to my parents. I'm always rude to them.
- 2 She .... (watch) so much TV, she .... (read) instead.
- 3 You .... (bring) a dictionary. We have plenty.
- 4 I....(get) some fresh air, I can't stay inside any more.



# **Discover culture**

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos and answer the questions.
  - 1 Which class looks more fun? Why?
  - 2 Do you like Maths? Why/Why not? What kinds of things do you do in your Maths class?







Find out about learning Maths.



- Watch the video without sound. Try to answer the questions.
  - 1 How do we use Maths in everyday life?
  - 2 What is the first group of pupils learning about? (0.27–1.09)
  - 3 What is the second group of pupils learning about? (1.10–2.30)
- Watch the video with sound and check your answers.
- 4 Watch the video with sound and complete the sentences.
  - 1 Students either love or <u>hate</u> Maths.
  - **2** We use Maths to measure distance, design art work, go shopping and ....
  - 3 Students get into groups to learn about ....
  - 4 Students do .... to learn about shapes in Maths.
  - 5 The students find geometric shapes in different ....
  - 6 Learning Maths this way is interesting and ....

- 5 Test your visual memory about what the students do. Mark the sentences true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.
  - 1 There is a student running in a race at the start. T
  - **2** The first groups of students do the fractions game in pairs.
  - 3 The students in the Art/Maths class sit on chairs in front of the teacher.
  - 4 The students have to discover geometry in art.
  - 5 They write down a list of the different shapes on the board.
- 6 What objects do you see in the video? How is each one used in the Maths class?

marbles a mouse (computer) smartphone a quilt a clock small stones a football

a mouse – we use a mouse when we use a computer

## Your turn

have calculators.

- 7 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - 1 Which of the two Maths lessons in the video do you like the most? Why?
  - When do you use Maths outside class? Do your classes help with these things? Why/Why not? I use Maths when I ...
    We don't need Maths class for everyday life, we

# **Reading An article**

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photo of Singapore below and make a list of at least three adjectives to describe the city.
- - a The location and geography of the country
  - **b** Learning languages in Singapore
  - c A new way of teaching an old subject
- 3 Read the article again and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where is Singapore?
  - 2 What is special about the country?
  - 3 Is the Singapore approach to teaching Maths a traditional Asian approach?
  - 4 At what age do children start school in Singapore?
  - 5 How do children in Singapore learn basic ideas in Maths?
  - 6 Which countries have adopted the Singapore approach?

### (Explore phrasal verbs (1)

Look at the highlighted words in the text. Match the phrasal verbs in the box with the definitions (1–5).

pick up find out write out work out try out

- 1 write something again more completely write out
- 2 do the calculation to find an answer to Maths problem
- 3 learn something new
- 4 test something to see if it works
- 5 get information about something or learn about it
- Vocabulary bank page 132

### Your turn

5 Compare the primary school with yours. Write sentences. Compare your sentences with a partner.

	classroom atmosphere	learning things
Singapore		
My school		



Singapore is a fascinating place. It's a giant floating city 130 km north of the Equator. The city has four official languages – Chinese, Malay, Tamil and English. English is the language everyone uses for official business and all the schools teach English.

Singapore is one of the smallest countries in the world, but it is also one of the richest. For years, it has been famous for its high level of education – and it's the number one country

in the world for teaching Maths. Most people think that Asian schools in general are very strict. Is this the secret of Singapore's great success too? Not at all! If you walked into a Maths class in a primary school in Singapore, you'd be surprised by how active and noisy it was. You wouldn't see children sitting quietly at their chairs watching their teacher at the board and **writing out** sums in their notebooks. You would see a lot of activity and hear a lot of noise.

School starts at the age of seven in Singapore. The Maths programme starts very slowly and the younger children spend a lot of time on the first steps. They use everyday objects, like beans and fruit, to feel and see the basic ideas. They don't copy from the board or do exercises in their books – they **pick** Maths **up** through playing. By sharing objects with friends, they **find out** about division. By building towers with blocks, they learn addition. It looks like the children are simply playing, but they're not – they're **working out** the answers to complex problems in a fun and interesting way.

Would this system work if it was taught in Romania? A lot of schools around the world have **tried** it **out** – the UK for example, and the USA. And it's been a great success.



**FACT!** The largest Maths class was given in Leszno, Poland, in May 2018, with 4,598 participants.



# Speaking Asking for and giving advice

#### Real talk: Who would you talk to if you needed advice?

- 1 Watch the teenagers in the video. How many teenagers ...
- a would talk to a member of their family?5
- **b** would talk to a friend?
- c say they would get good advice?
- Who would you talk to if you needed advice?

- 3 Hayley is talking to her friend James. What does Hayley want advice about?
- 4 Complete the conversation with the phrases in the *Useful language* box.

#### **Useful language**

What's the problem?
I need your advice.
It's a good idea to ...
What do you think I should do?
If I were you I wouldn't ...
Maybe we could ...
Have you tried ...?
They say I shouldn't worry.

Hayley: James, can I talk to you? I need your

advice.

James: Yes, of course. What's 2....?

Hayley: Well, there's a girl in my class who is

saying nasty things about me.

James: Really? What sort of things?

Hayley: Oh, that I copy her homework and cheat

in exams. It's awful! What do you think

³....do?

James: Look, if I were you, I 4... listen to her.

What do your other friends say?

Hayley: They say I ⁵.... worry. But I can't help it.

She makes me feel so embarrassed!

James: Yeah. Perhaps it's 6... idea to do

something.

Hayley: Yes, but what?

James: Well, have you 7.... talking to her? Maybe

we 8... do it together.

Hayley: Yes, that's a good idea. Thanks, James!



- 6 Work with a partner. Practise the conversation in Exercise 4.
- Work with a partner. Prepare a conversation like the one in Exercise 4. Use the photos below and the phrases in the *Useful language* box. Practise the conversation with your partner.

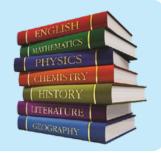
#### Problem 1

Someone in your class has taken your mobile phone. (nobody knows who)



#### Problem 2

You have lost two textbooks you left in the classroom yesterday.





UNIT 3

1 Read Paula's letter. What is the problem?

FRIENDS SCHOOL HOMEWORK FAMILY



My English teacher hates me!

Paula asked 4 days ago

Hi everyone

I need some advice. I think my teacher hates me. I've had detention every week for the last four weeks from Mr Harris, my English teacher. English was always my best subject and Mr Harris was my favourite teacher, but now I'm not getting good marks, and I'm very worried about this. He's always giving me detention. What should I do?



#### best answer

LiverpoolLad answered 2 days ago

I think maybe the problem is not only your teacher but also your marks. You say that English was your best subject and that your marks haven't been very good recently. Perhaps your English teacher is strict because he wants to show you that he's not happy with your marks. It's possible that he's trying to make you work harder by giving you detention.

I think you should try talking to him because communication is always the best way to work out a solution to a problem. You should ask him what the problem is and why you are getting detention. You could also work harder to improve your marks.

I really hope this helps.

- 2 Read the answer from LiverpoolLad again. What things does he do in his answer?
  - Give a title
  - Say what he thinks the real problem might be
  - Give reasons for his opinions
  - Offer different ways of looking at the problem
- Give direct orders
- Offer several solutions
- Give reasons for his advice
- Write a final sentence to make the person feel better

### **Useful language**

#### Summarising a problem and giving advice

Use different phrases to summarise what you want to say and to give advice.

- I think maybe the problem is not only ... but also ...
- You say that ...
- I think you should try ... because ...

- 3 Look at the *Useful language* box. Find two other phrases to give advice in Exercise 1.
- 4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

should try problem possible Perhaps also

- 1 I think maybe the ... is your marks. ... your teacher is angry with you. It's ... that he wants to encourage you.
- 2 You .... talk to him. I think you should .... asking him for advice. You could .... study harder.



### Get writing - Portfolio

#### PLAN

5 Read the problem below. Plan your answer. Make notes on the things in Exercise 2.

Isabel cheated in a Maths test. It was the first time and she feels bad. She didn't study and she wrote the answers on her arm. She got a good mark and her parents are going to buy her a new smartphone.

#### WRITE

6 Write your answer. Use your notes from Exercise 5 and the model text to help you.

#### CHECK

- 7 Can you say YES to these questions?
  - Is the information from the plan in your answer?
  - Have you used different expressions to restate the problem and to give your advice?



In this unit ...



Where does it all go? p49



Build it better p52



**Doing voluntary** work p54



**CLIL Driving into** the future p151

#### Vocabulary

- Materials
- Words from the text
- Energy issues
- Phrasal verbs (2)

#### **Language focus**

- Present simple passive
- Past simple passive

- talk about types of materials.
- describe how materials are recycled.
- talk about the energy I use at home.

Green planet

- understand a text about renewable
- apologise and explain to a friend.
- write a newspaper article.

# **BE CURIOUS**

What can you see in the photo? Start thinking

- What is a wind farm?
- What do wind turbines produce?
- Why are they good for the environment?



# **Vocabulary Materials**

1 Match a material (or materials) in the box with objects in the photos. Then listen, check and repeat. What's the function of each of the objects?

bricks cement cotton glass leather metal paper plastic rubber wood

- a wood
- 2 Match the materials from Exercise 1 with the sentences.
  - 1 We often use this material to make furniture like chairs and tables. wood
  - 2 We often use this material to make shoes, bags and belts.
  - 3 If you drop a bottle made of this material, it will probably break.
  - 4 This material is very common for making T-shirts.
  - **5** We make tyres for cars with this material.
  - 6 This is the most common material used to make books.
  - 7 These two materials are very common for building houses.

#### Get it right!

We don't use *the* before plural nouns to talk about things in a general way. ✓ We often use this material to make *the shoes*. ✗

leather	shoes
cotton	
glass	
wood	
paper	
rubber	
plastic	
metal	

Say it right! • page 116

### Your turn

Think of two objects you've got at home for each of the materials in Exercise 1. Make notes. Work with a partner. Tell him/her about the objects.

I've got a lot of leather shoes.

**Output Output O** 

# **Reading An article**

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos below and answer the questions.
  - 1 What are the people building?
  - 2 What materials are they using?
  - 3 Why are they using them?
- 2 Read an article about Mike Reynolds. What kind of houses does he build?
- 3 Read the article again and answer the questions.
  - 1 How does Mike protect his Earthships from the cold?
  - 2 How does he provide light during the day?
  - 3 Why does he grow his plants in the front of the house?
  - 4 How does he get energy and water?
  - 5 How did he and his organisation help other people?
  - 6 What is Mike's main message to the world?

## Explore words in context

4 Match the verbs in the box with the definitions (1–7).

warrior throw away shaped match decoration northern reuse

- 1 made into a particular form or shape shaped
- 2 use again
- 3 someone who fights for something
- 4 be similar to or look the same
- 5 put something in the rubbish
- 6 things used to make something look beautiful
- 7 from the north

### Your turn

- 5 Which materials do you recycle or reuse at school or at home? What do you do with them? Make notes.
- 6 Talk about your notes from Exercise 5. Is it easy to recycle materials in your area? Why/Why not?

At school, we recycle some of our rubbish.

My mum takes plastic stuff to a special container.

It's very easy to recycle materials where I live. There's a container for every type of rubbish.

# GARBAGE Mike Re waste. I away. H They are



from recycled materials.

An Earthship home. These houses are a symbol of his fight against waste.



Mike Reynolds builds houses from recycled materials to show us what we waste. Mike's houses are built using the things that other people throw away. His Earthships (as his houses are called) are beautiful buildings. They are shaped and coloured to match the landscape around them. He uses bottles to create beautiful walls full of light. There are plants everywhere, inside and out. But the plants and the bottles, like everything else in the Earthships, are not only there for decoration. Every single material in an Earthship is carefully chosen. Old car tyres are used to build strong walls. The rubber protects the houses from the cold northern winds in winter. These walls are built at the back of the house. The walls at the front of the house are built from metal cans or glass bottles. They're held together with the earth from around them and cement is not used at all. The beautiful bottle walls are built to the south to give light during the day. The house is heated by the larger front windows. They also create the perfect temperature for growing all kinds of fruit and vegetables, and the plants are protected against the bad weather. When you live in an Earthship, you grow your own food, get electricity from the sun and wind and you get water from the rain and snow.

Mike and the Earthship organisation use their ability and experience to help people all over the world. In 2010, they visited victims of the earthquake in Haiti. They taught them how to build safe, new homes quickly and cheaply from materials that they could find around them. Mike points out that rubbish only exists because we humans create it. That is exactly what Mike, the Garbage Warrior, wants us to see – that we have to stop waste and reuse our rubbish.

**FACT!** Recycled tyres are used to build roads and pavements.





# Present simple passive

- 1 Complete the examples from the text on page 48. Then complete the rules.
  - Old car tyres .....to build walls.

    The house .....by the larger front windows.

Cement .....

- Mike's houses **are not built** with traditional materials.
- 1 To form the passive, use .... + past participle.
- 2 Active: They make the houses from rubbish.
- 3 Passive: The houses .... from rubbish.
- Grammar reference page 123
- 2 Look at the chart below. Complete the sentences. Use the passive form of the verbs in brackets.
  - 1 The house <u>is made</u> (make) of bottles and cans.
  - 2 The cans .... (recycle) to build walls.
  - 3 The walls .... (design) to protect the house from extreme temperatures.
  - 4 The heat from the sun .... (use) to give power to the house.
  - 5 The water from the kitchen .... (reuse) in the garden.
  - 6 The houses .... (build) into the side of a hill.

#### **Get it right!**

Passive not active

The houses are called Earthships.

The town *is located* in the south.

Active not passive

The Art lesson *starts* at ten o'clock. (not *is started*)

The exhibition *closes* today. (not *is closed*)



# 3 Choose the correct words to complete the text. Then listen and check.

Rows and rows of human statues are standing in the main square. As you 'move/ are moved closer, you <sup>2</sup> see / are seen that they <sup>3</sup> make / are made of all kinds of everyday objects. Some <sup>4</sup> build / are built from plastic bags, bottles and cans. Others <sup>5</sup> decorate / are decorated with computer keyboards or TV screens. The Trash Army, as it <sup>6</sup> call / is called, is a travelling exhibition. It has travelled all over the world and it <sup>7</sup> shows / is shown people how much rubbish we <sup>8</sup> produce / is produced through our modern lifestyles.



### **Present simple passive questions**

- 4 Look at the questions about the text on page 48 and complete the rule.
  - Are the walls in Mike's house made of bricks?
  - Why are rubber tyres used?
  - What are the walls at the front of the house made from?
  - **Is** the house **heated** by electricity?

To form questions, we use ... + subject + .....

- 5 Answer the questions in Exercise 4.
- 6 Unscramble the words to make questions.
  - 1 your / wood / house / is / made of?

    Is your house made of wood?
  - 2 recycled / the plastic bottles / your / are / in / house?
  - 3 for / later / newspapers and magazines / old / are / saved?
  - 4 reused / plastic bags / are?
  - 5 your / vegetables / are / grown / garden / in?

### Your turn

7 Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 6 with a partner.

A: Is your house made of wood? B: No, it isn't. It's made of bricks.

#### Learn about rubbish in the sea.

- What sort of rubbish do you think is found in the sea?
- Why is the sea so important for the planet?
- What happens to rubbish in the sea?





Where does it all go?

# Listening A class presentation Vocabulary Energy issues



- Work with a partner. Look at the picture of a living room and say how the room is similar to and different from the living room in your home.
- The living room is an exhibit in a museum. Listen to three students talking about the house. What do they talk about?
  - a Heating homes in the past
  - **b** Changing technology at home
  - **c** Energy at home
- Listen again and answer the questions.
  - 1 How long has the Eco House been open?
  - 2 What does the museum use the Eco House for?
  - 3 What does Rebecca say about computers?
  - 4 What uses the most energy?
  - 5 What did the experiment show?
  - What does the last student want to discuss about the house?



4 Match the verbs from the class presentation with the definitions (1-7).

consume leave on standby switch off waste save energy turn down reduce

- 1 to use energy consume
- 2 to stop energy being wasted
- 3 to use more energy than you need
- 4 to make something smaller
- 5 to leave an appliance connected to the electricity
- 6 to disconnect an appliance from the electricity
- 7 you use less energy by doing this with an appliance
- Omplete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in Exercise 4. Then listen and check.
  - Don't forget to switch off the lights before you go to bed.
  - **2** Can you .... the heating? It's really warm.
  - 3 You shouldn't .... the TV .... at night.
  - 4 Did you know your computer ... a lot of electricity?
  - It's better to have a shower than a bath because you don't .... so much water.
  - 6 You should try to .... the number of hours you use the air conditioning.
  - 7 We're trying to \_\_\_ so I always switch off my computer when I'm not using it.

### Your turn – An investigation

- 6 Ask and answer the questions with your partner.
  - How do you save energy in your house?
  - 2 How do you think you could save more energy at home?
  - **3** Why is it important to save energy?

I always switch off my computer and the monitor before I go to bed.

I leave the TV on standby so I should switch it off. Saving energy is important for the environment.

- Vocabulary bank page 133
- 7 Work in groups. Do a survey based on the questions in Exercise 6. Report your group's information to the class.

#### Check your results!

Through this activity you were able to:

- answer the questions clearly and correctly.
- follow the steps given.
- work in a team. 🗖

# UNIT 4

# Language focus 2

# Past simple passive

# 1 Complete the examples from the listening on page 50.

- The Eco house ... built in 1985.
  Several changes ... made to the house.

  A lot of rubbish ... recycled in the 1980s.
  The lights were not switched off for a week.

  with by The Eco house was designed by the museum.
- Grammar reference page 123

# 2 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple passive form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 The Eco house was completed (complete) in 1985.
- 2 It .... (build) on a large piece of land.
- 3 A lot of energy .... (save) by turning down the temperature.
- 4 The kitchen .... (redesign) two years ago.
- **5** A lot of changes .... (make) to the house.
- 6 The old fridge and washing machine .... (not throw) away.

# 3 Rewrite the sentences below using the past passive and by.

- 1 Companies first used plastic bottles in 1947. Plastic bottles were first used in 1947.
- 2 They finished the Burj Al Arab hotel in Dubai in 1999.
- 3 The Chinese invented paper almost 2,000 years ago.
- **4** Europeans threw out about five billion mobile phones in 2022.
- **5** Swiss people recycled 94% of glass bottles last year.
- 6 John Dunlop made the first rubber tyre for his son's bicycle.

### Past simple passive questions

4 Complete the examples from the listening on page 50.

#### **Wh-** questions

Why ....the Eco house ....? When was the house completed?

#### **Yes/No** questions and short answers

....a lot of energy .... by reducing the temperature?

Yes, it was./No, it wasn't.

**Were** the lights **switched** off last night? Yes, they **were**./No, they **weren't**.

- Grammar reference page 123
- Complete the conversation with the correct form of the past simple passive. Then listen and check.
  - A: Hey, shall we do this general knowledge quiz?
  - B: OK. But I'm not very good!
  - A: OK, first question. 1... Don Quixote 2.... (write) by Shakespeare?
  - **B:** That's easy! No, it <sup>3</sup>.... It <sup>4</sup>.... by Cervantes.
  - A: Good! Question two 5.... the first modern Olympic Games 6.... (hold) in Greece?
  - **B:** No, they <sup>7</sup>.... They <sup>8</sup>... in London.
  - A: No, it was Athens! OK, the last question again it's very easy! Who <sup>9</sup>.... Harry Potter <sup>10</sup>.... (play) by?
  - **B:** I know that one! He <sup>11</sup>... by Daniel Radcliffe easy!

### Your turn

6 Write five general knowledge quiz questions using the past passive. Use the questions in Exercise 5 to help you.

In 'Spider-Man: No Way Home' (2021), who was Peter Parker played by?

7 Ask and answer your questions with your partner. Give full sentences.

A: In 'Spider-Man: No Way Home' (2021), who was Peter Parker played by?
B: He was played by Tom Holland.



# Discover culture

Work with a partner. Look at the photos and describe them. What do you think the video will be about?





Find out about building sustainably.







#### **Build it better**

- Watch the video without sound and check your ideas.
- 3 Which of the words below do you think you will hear in the video?

tornado flood sustainable renewable sunlight rain mirror solar panels natural electricity environment

- 4 Watch the video with sound. Check your answers to Exercise 3.
- 5 Watch the video again and match the information.
  - 1 hail stones -
  - 95%
  - the wind speed was

  - the solar panels
  - a new and improved
- a of homes and businesses destroyed
- Greensburg was created
- create energy for the building
- the size of tennis balls
- 320 km per hour

6 Omplete the text about rebuilding Greensburg. Use the words in the box.

> mirror holes solar panels tubes sunlight building sustainable electricity heat

Solar energy was used in the new building. <sup>1</sup> Sunlight shines into these tubes. It's reflected through the tubes by a 2.... and it lights up the room. A special cover on top of each tube keeps the <sup>3</sup> outside. Then large <sup>4</sup> were made and the <sup>5</sup> were placed inside them. For even more 6... energy, 7... were built. When the panels receive sunlight, they turn it into 8.... Solar panels can create enough energy to power the whole 9....

7 Watch the video again and check your answers to Exercises 5 and 6.

### Your turn

- 8 Discuss the questions in groups.
  - 1 What are the most common natural disasters in Romania?
  - 2 Are there any buildings with solar panels in your town?
  - 3 Do many people have solar panels on their houses in your town?
  - Do you think solar panels are a good idea? Why/Why not?
    - In Romania, we have terrible floods ...



# **Reading An article**

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos below and answer the questions.
  - 1 What can you see in each photo?
  - 2 What connects the photos?
- Read the article about renewable energy. Match the renewable energies in the photos with the countries in the text.
- 3 Read the article again and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where does Minnesota get its biomass from?
  - 2 What two benefits does using biomass have for the environment?
  - 3 Why is the sun so important in Australia?
  - 4 What two results has the use of solar power had in Australia?
  - 5 Why has Britain got lots of sea and wind?

# THREE COUNTRIES, THREE RENEWABLES

Humans are capable of producing energy that – unlike oil, natural gas and coal – does not damage the environment. We look at three countries and three different renewable energy sources.

### Explore phrasal verbs (2)

- 4 Look at the highlighted words in the text. Match the phrasal verbs (1–5) with the definitions (a–e).
  - 1 bring down
    - down a build on b cut so it falls to the ground
  - 2 keep on
- reduce/make smaller
- 3 put up4 knock down
- d fall to the ground
- 5 cut down
- e continue
- Vocabulary bank page 133

# Your turn

- 5 Make notes about the questions.
  - 1 Why is renewable energy important for our world?
  - 2 What renewable energy is used in Romania?
  - 3 What do you do to save energy at home or at school?
- 6 Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 5 with a partner. Use your notes to help you.

The USA The USA has several renewable energy projects. A lot of power stations use biomass to produce energy. Biomass is

anything natural – plants and trees mostly – and it can be used to produce electricity. In a recent storm in Minnesota, over 3,000 trees were **knocked down** by strong winds. The wood from the trees was burned to produce energy. The state also wants to **cut down** 40,000 more trees because they are diseased. Of course, new trees are planted in place of the old ones, which also helps the environment.



Australia It's certainly sunny in Australia. The country gets more than 3,500 hours of sunlight a year – that's ten hours a day

and solar energy is big business. Australia has spent a lot of money on solar energy.
 Solar panels power houses, schools, businesses and factories all over the country. One

in four homes in Australia uses solar power. Australian solar power has **brought down** the country's energy bills and has had a very positive environmental effect. If Australia **keeps on** spending money on energy, it is thought that by 2030, 50% of Australia's energy could come from renewable sources.



Everyone knows that in the UK it's not sunny very often! Britain only gets between 1,200 and 1,600 hours of sunlight a year. So it's clear that solar power isn't big in Britain. But Britain has other renewable sources that can produce energy. It's an island so the British government is taking advantage of

the often windy conditions and is **putting up** wind farms off its coasts. In Cumbria, in the north-west of England, enough energy is produced by 87 wind turbines to power almost 600,000 homes. Moreover, the UK has the largest offshore wind farm in the world, which is located off the coast of Yorkshire.









**FACT!** The Earth gets enough sunlight in one hour to give energy to the whole world for one year.



# Speaking Apologising and explaining

#### **Real talk:** Do you do any volunteer work?

- Watch the teenagers in the video. Which volunteer work do they do?
  - babysitting
  - help in after-school clubs
  - cleaning the school
  - read to older people
- pick up litter
- teach children English
- help in school garden
- help older people with their animals
- Do you do any volunteer

- Jessica meets her friend Oliver. How many excuses does Jessica give?
- 4 Complete the conversation with the phrases in the Useful language box.

#### **Useful language**

I'm really sorry. I'm sorry. I really meant to come, honest!

Oh well, never mind. The thing is, ... I'll (come next week), I promise.

I completely forgot.

The problem was, ...

Oliver: Hello Jessica. What happened to you

yesterday?

Jessica: Yesterday? What do you mean?

Oliver: We were planting vegetables in the

school garden.

Jessica: Oh, yes! I'm <sup>1</sup> *sorry* ... I completely <sup>2</sup> ....

Oliver: Jessica, I sent you a text to remind you! Jessica: Yes, I know, I really 3.... to come, honest!

The problem 4.... my alarm clock was

broken.

Oliver: Well it was only a couple of hours, not

all day.

Jessica: Yes, I know. I 5.... sorry, Oliver. 6.... is, I had a lot of chores to do too and because I

slept late, I didn't have time.

Oliver: Oh well, 7.... mind. How about next week?

We're planning to plant some fruit trees.

Jessica: Great! I'll come next week, 8....!

- Listen again and check your answers.
- Work with a partner. Practise the conversation in Exercise 4.
- Change the words in bold in the conversation. Use the information below. Take turns to apologise to a friend and explain what the problem was.

#### Situation 1

You forgot to go with your friend to see an exhibition about Earthships. Now your friend is angry.



#### Situation 2

You didn't help your friend write an article about recycling. Now your friend is upset.





# Writing A newspaper article

1 Look at the photos and read the article from a school newspaper. What did the volunteers do?

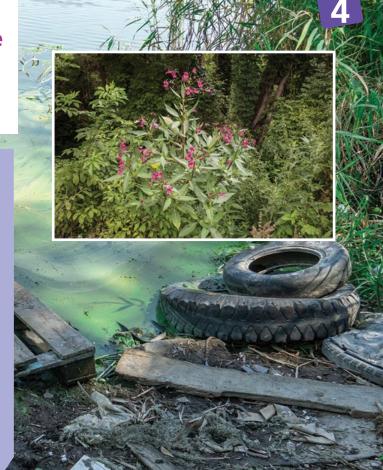


LAST SUNDAY, ABOUT 100 PEOPLE
WENT TO LONGLEY NATURE RESERVE
TO CLEAN UP THE RIVER. THE
EVENT WAS ORGANISED BY THE
CLEANUPRIVERS PROJECT, WHICH
HELPS TO PROTECT THE ENVIRONMENT.

Every summer local volunteers collect rubbish which is thrown in the river,' John Sanders, from Cleanuprivers told me. This time, I was one of them. We picked up hundreds of plastic bottles, food packets and drinks cans. But that's not all that's in the river. 'We also found car tyres, a fridge and an old bed!' one volunteer said.

The clean-up also removes non-native plants from the river. These plants kill off native species and affect biodiversity. At Longley we cut down Himalayan Balsam. 'It's a beautiful plant, but dangerous because it covers everything,' said the local plant expert, Lynn Douglas. The clean-up was hard work but fun, and the river looked great! So when is the next event? Check the Cleanuprivers.org web page.

Report by Chris Davies



- Read the newspaper article again. Put the information in the correct order.
  - What is happening next?
  - When did they do it? 1
  - What did they do?
  - What was the opinion of the event?
  - Who was involved?

## Useful language

#### Using direct speech

When writing newspaper articles, use direct quotes. 'Every summer, ... in the river,' John Sanders ... told me.

- 3 Look at the *Useful language* box. Find more examples of direct speech in the text. What is the punctuation for exclamations?
- 4 Write these direct speech sentences with the correct punctuation.
  - 1 What happened to the river she asked 'What happened to the river?' she asked.
  - 2 It's amazing said Abby
  - 3 Meet me at the river she told me
  - 4 We have to clear out all this rubbish she said
  - 5 Are you coming to the next event I asked Tom

# Get writing – Portfolio

#### PLAN

5 Plan your newspaper article about an event (sport, cultural) in your area. Make notes on the things in Exercise 2 and use the same structure.

#### WRITE

6 Write your article. Use your notes from Exercise 5 and the model text to help you.

#### CHECK

- 7 Can you say YES to these questions?
  - Is the information from the plan in your article?
  - Have you used some direct speech in your article?



# Vocabulary

# 1 Complete the text with the correct form of the words in the box.

bullying hand in homework get detention cheat in a test on time wear a uniform get good marks write lines

I like my school, but there are a few rules that we have to follow. We have to '\_wear\_a uniform\_ - it's a white shirt and a black skirt or trousers. In the morning, if you aren't '\_..., you have to write your name in the late book. We have to '\_...\_ on Friday morning – we get it twice a week. If we forget we '\_... - this means we have to stay after school and '\_... I study hard and I usually '\_... I've never '\_... and anyone who tries to cheat gets into trouble. All the students in my school are kind and friendly – there's no '\_... - it's a great school.

#### **2** Complete the phrases with *make* or *do*.

- make a mistake
   something interesting
   friends
   your homework
   a phone call
   the right thing
- **3** Write the material for each object.



#### 1 glass

#### 4 Complete the text with the words in the box.

<del>consume</del> saves leave wastes reduce switch off turn down

People generally ¹...consume... a large amount of energy every day. There are a number of ways to ².... your energy bills and help the environment at the same time. ³... your heating in winter – wear an extra sweater instead! Using cold water to wash clothes also ⁴... energy. ⁵... appliances when you are not using them. Some people 6... their TV or computer on standby all night and that 7... a lot of electricity.

# Explore vocabulary

#### 5 Complete the text with the words in the box.

propose vote together throw away shaped match decorations reuse (x2)

Adam: We need to decide on the theme for the

end-of-school party. What does everyone

¹ propose ?

Bella: What about a ball with an eco theme?

Adam: Okay. What do you mean?

Bella: Well, we could <sup>2</sup>.... coloured waste paper

to make 3.....

**Chris:** That's a good idea – we 4.... a lot of paper

and it's a good way to 5... it.

Adam: Good, so who wants to make them?

Chris: Bella and I can do that 6....

Bella: Could we have paper plates 7.... like leaves?

Chris: How does that 8.... the eco theme?

Bella: Trees – the environment ...

Adam: Oh okay, yes. Right, let's 9..... Who's in

favour of the eco-theme ball?

All: Yes!

# 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrases in the box.

<del>pick up</del> find out write out work out try out keep on put up knock down cut down

- 1 George <u>picked up</u> French really quickly when we went to Paris.
- 2 My dad .... a tree house for us in our garden when we were young.
- 3 I'm going to ... my new bike at the weekend.
- **4** A: I can't .... the answer to this Maths problem.
  - **B:** I know it's difficult, but you should .... trying to find the answer.
- 5 We need to ....about renewable energy in our country for a school project.
- They had to .... that beautiful old tree in our streetit was dangerous.
- 7 Can you .... your full name and address here, please?
- 8 Did you know that they are going to .... that building? It's old and dangerous.

# 1 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Use the second conditional.

- 1 If you <u>were</u> (be) more confident, you would make (make) make more friends.
- 2 If he .... (not go) to school, he .... (be) bored.
- 3 If they ... (wear) uniforms, they ... (look) the same.
- 4 We ....(have) more free time if we ....(not have) so much homework.
- 5 You .... (not be) so tired if you .... (not stay) up late.
- 6 If she ....(study) harder, she ....(get) better marks at school.

#### 2 Write questions using the second conditional.

- 1 What / you / do / if / you / see someone cheating in a test?
  - What would you do if you saw someone cheating in a test?
- 2 Where / you / live / if / you / can go anywhere in the world?
- 3 If / you / win / 5,000 euros / what / you / do?
- 4 If / your friend / not answer / your email / what / you / say?
- 5 If / you / not pass / your next test / you / feel upset?

# 3 Rewrite the sentences using the present simple passive.

- 1 They recycle these metal tins. These metal tins are recycled.
- 2 They make these sweaters from plastic bottles.
- 3 They use corn to make heating oil.
- 4 They produce electricity from this water.
- 5 They build these houses from organic materials.
- 6 Solar energy heats the water.

# 4 Complete the sentences with the past passive of the verbs in the box. Then write a question for each statement.

discover build make destroy grow not eat

- 1 The first talking film <u>was made</u> in 1927. When <u>was the first talking film made</u>?
- **2** Tea .... in China 4,000 years ago. When in China?
- 3 Gold .... in California in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. Where .... in the 19<sup>th</sup> century?
- 4 Pompeii .... by a volcanic eruption in 79 AD. When .... by a volcanic eruption?
- 5 Tomatoes ... in Europe until the 16<sup>th</sup> century. When ... in Europe?
- 6 The first public railways .... in England in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. Where ....?



# 🗓 Language builder

# 5 Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

Tom: If you 1. a. your own blog on the internet,

what 2...about?

Hanna: About the environment. Lots of blogs about

the environment 3.... on the internet, but not many of them 4... for teenagers. We 5... help the planet. If we 6... something

now, then it 7.... too late.

Tom: I agree. I read about a music blog. It 8.... by

a teenager a couple of years ago. It 9.... by thousands of people and later he became a

music journalist.

Hanna: So if my blog 10.... popular, then someone

11.... me a job as a journalist, too!

Tom: Who knows? I think I 12....a blog. Let's write

it together.

a wrote

10

**b** would write **c** will write

2 a will it be **b** would it be **c** is it

**a** published **b** are published **c** publish

4 a are written **b** are writing **c** are write

**5** a need to **b** needn't **c** shouldn't

6 a are not doing b not do c don't do

7 a is b would be c will be

**8** a started **b** was starting **c** was started

9 a readb was reading c was read

**b** is becoming **c** would become

c am starting

I1 a will probably **b** gives **c** probably is

give probably giving

**b** might start

Speaking

a becomes

12 a started

# 6 Match the sentences.

- 1 I need your advice. **b**
- 2 What do you think I should do?
- 3 I'm really sorry.
- 4 I sent you a text to remind you!
- 5 Have you tried talking to him?
- 6 Oh well, how about next week?
- a If I were you, I wouldn't listen to him.
- **b** What's the problem?
- c Yes, I know. I really meant to come, honest!
- d No, I haven't that's a good idea.
- e Okay, never mind.
- f Yes, great, I'll come.





- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.
  - 1 You would wake up (wake up) early if you didn't go (not go) to bed so late.
  - 2 If I ..... (have) more time, I ..... (play) tennis daily.
  - 3 If you ..... (study) harder, you ..... (do) better in your exams.
  - 4 I ..... (not spend) so much time with you if I ..... (not like) you.
  - 5 If my parents ..... (have) a garden, they ..... (grow) a lot of vegetables.
  - 6 You ..... (not get) so tired if you ..... (not sit) in front of a computer all day!

\_\_\_\_/ 5

#### 2 Write ONE word in each gap.

- 1 Would you leave school if you had the chance?
- 2 If you ..... not have so much homework, what would you do every day?
- 3 Who .... you like to meet if you could meet anyone in the world?
- 4 What would you buy ..... you had €1 million?
- 5 If you ..... live anywhere, where would you live?
- 6 What would you do if you .... me?

\_\_\_\_/ 5

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

tell not finish lose have be do

- 1 What would you do (you) if you lost your keys?
- 2 If you .... a lot of money, how would you spend it?
- 3 My dad ..... me I couldn't go out if I did something wrong.
- 4 I wouldn't stay late at the party tonight if I ..... you. We've got school tomorrow.
- 5 What would happen if you .... your phone?
- 6 Would teacher be cross if we .... our project?

\_\_\_\_/ 5

#### 4 Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.

What would your life be like if you 1.....famous? I can't imagine! And if I 2..... a famous sportsperson, say, I wouldn't be able to speak because 3..... too nervous! How 4..... you behave if you saw your favourite tennis player? 5..... to take a photo and then put it on my wall if I 6..... the opportunity.

then put it on my waii ii 1° the opportunity.							
1	а	be	b	are	C	were	
2	а	meet	b	met	C	have met	
3	а	I'd be	b	l was	C	I've been	
4	a	could	b	did	C	would	
5	а	I wanted	b	I'd want	C	I want	
6	а	had	b	have	c	have had	

# Vocabulary

#### 5 Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.

Have you ever got 1..... at school? When I was at school, students got 2..... for doing different things well. The person who had the most always got a prize. I never won anything because I didn't really 3.... my homework well, and it was never 4..... time. What's more, I didn't 5..... friends easily so I was quite lonely. Now I'm a teacher and I 6..... the decision not to have such competitions in my class.

1	а	trouble	b	detention	C	bullying
2	а	lines	b	punishment	C	marks
3	а	do	b	make	C	have
4	а	at	b	in	C	on
5	а	do	b	make	C	get
6	а	gave	b	did	C	made
						/ 5

6 Complete the sentences with words in the box.

pick try write find work set

- 1 We always <u>set</u> off for school really early in the morning.
- 2 I usually .... up a lot of new words if I'm in another country.
- 3 I need to .... out more about my country's history. I'll look on the internet.
- 4 I can't read my notes. I think I'll ..... them out again.
- 5 I need to .... out the answer to this Maths question.
- 6 My school wants to .... out a new timetable.

\_\_\_\_/ 5

# Writing

7 Read an email from your friend, Sam. Answer him, giving some advice. Use should(n't), need(n't). Write 80–100 words.

My two best friends are going on a camping trip with their family, and they've asked me to go with them. But my parents have said no. They think I'm too young, and anyway they want me to go on holiday with them – and my little sister. Boring! What should I do?



\_\_\_\_/15
Granted points 5/5
\_\_\_\_/50





1 Complete the sentences with the present simple passive form of the verbs in the box.

not grow manufacture <del>produce</del> show not sell use

- 1 Chocolate *is produced* in a lot of countries.
- 2 Tea .... in many northern countries it's too cold.
- 3 A lot of cars .... in huge factories in Germany.
- 4 The sun's energy ..... to heat this swimming pool.
- **5** In supermarkets, milk .... in glass bottles any more.
- 6 A different film .... at our local cinema every week.



# 2 Rewrite the sentences. Use the past simple passive.

- 1 My mum decorated our living room.

  Our living room was decorated by my mum.
- 2 My favourite author wrote this book.
- 3 A boy from our school won the competition!
- 4 A famous film star wore that dress.
- 5 My grandparents bought my cinema ticket.
- 6 My sister took this picture.



# 3 Make questions using the present simple or past simple passive.

- 1 When / your house / build? When was your house built?
- 2 When / the Olympic Games / hold / in London?
- 3 Where / mobile phones / manufacture / now?
- 4 Who / television / invent / by?
- 5 How many films / make / in the US / each year?
- 6 that picture / paint / by your uncle?

\_\_\_\_/ 5

#### 4 Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.

1..... a lot of energy wasted in your house? Our house 2.... built in the 1980s so it isn't very energy efficient. One reason for that is because solar energy 3.... much in those days. The walls 4.... made of bricks and cement, but they're not very thick. Today a lot of houses are designed 5.... architects who specialise in green technology. You can even buy a house that is completely made 6 recycled materials.

	1-	,	_	-,		_
1	а	Do	b	Has	<b>(c)</b>	ls
2	а	is	b	did	C	was
3	а	wasn't used	b	isn't used	C	didn't use
4	а	was	b	are	C	have been
5	а	from	b	of	C	by
6	а	for	b	of	C	with

\_\_\_\_/ 5

# Vocabulary

- 5 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb. The first letter is there to help you.
  - 1 You should disconnect all appliances when you go away. You should <u>switch</u> all appliances when you go away.
  - 2 It's important to take your glass bottles to a bottle bank. It's important to r\_\_\_\_\_ your glass bottles.
  - 3 We shouldn't put our plastic shopping bags straight into the waste. We should try to r\_\_\_ our plastic shopping bags, if possible.
  - 4 It's almost impossible not to use energy nowadays. It's almost impossible not to c \_ \_ \_ energy nowadays.
  - 5 We should all try not to use more energy than we need. We should all try not to w \_ \_ \_ energy.
  - 6 Why don't you lower the temperature and put on a sweater instead? Why don't you t \_ \_ \_ down the heating and put on a sweater instead?



Write sentences using the following phrasal verbs: put up, throw away, knock down, cut down, keep on. Explain what they mean.

We're going to <u>put up</u> a new fence around our garden. (=build)

# Writing

- Write an email to your friend (80–100 words) about an event in your town that you have participated in. In your email, include this information:
  - tell your friend what kind of event it was;
  - explain what you did at the event;
  - say whether you think the event was a success.

Granted points 5/5

**Total:** 

\_\_\_\_/ 100

### **Self-evaluation**

- The most important thing I learned in Units 3–4 is .....
- I liked ... the most.
- It was quite difficult for me to .....



In this unit ...



Milan fashion week **p63** 



Inside the guitar p66



Music and fashion p68



CLIL Trendsetters **p152** 

#### **Vocabulary**

- Clothes
- Words in context
- Adjectives and dependent prepositions
- Compound nouns

### Language focus

- used to and would (review)
- Future in the past
- Past perfect simple
- Past perfect continuous

buy clothes in a shop.

write an argumentative essay.

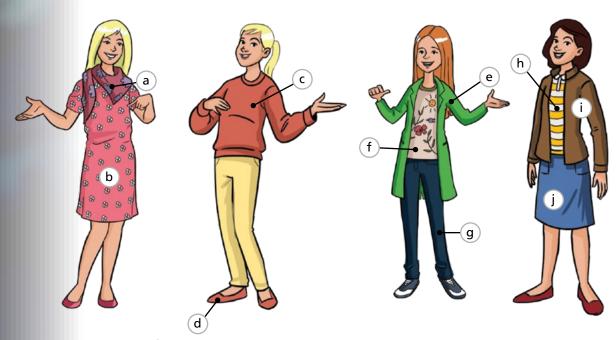
Past perfect continuous vs. past continuous



# **Vocabulary Clothes**

1 Match the phrases in the box with the clothes (a–j) in the pictures. Then listen, check and repeat.

a leather jacket a stripy shirt a silk scarf a cool T-shirt flat shoes tight jeans a flowery dress a denim skirt a baggy jumper a fitted coat



a a silk scarf

- 2 Look again at the phrases in Exercise 1. Find words that describe:
  - a the material the clothes are made from;
  - b the pattern on the material;
  - c the size or shape;
  - d a personal opinion about the clothes.
- Listen to three people talking about the clothes they are wearing. Find the people in the pictures in Exercise 1.

### Your turn

4 Look again at the phrases in Exercise 1. Change the adjectives to create new phrases to describe clothes you like wearing.

leather jacket – denim jacket, tight jeans – baggy jeans

- 5 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - 1 Which of the clothes in the pictures and in Exercise 1 do you have in your wardrobe?
  - 2 How often do you wear them?
  - 3 What kind of clothes do you like wearing? Why?
  - **4** Do your parents ever tell you what to wear? When? Are you happy to wear the clothes they suggest?

In my wardrobe, I've got a really baggy jumper. It's horrible!

Me too! My aunt gave it to me for my birthday, but I never wear it.

**○ Vocabulary bank •** page 134

# **Reading Short online texts**

1 Read the introduction to the quiz and answer the questions.



# TEENAGE FASHIONS

from the past

How much do you know about teenage fashions? Test yourself with our quick fashion quiz. Look at the photos.

- What order do they come in, from the earliest to the most recent?
- What did the different groups use to call themselves? Can you remember their names?



- - Teddy boys and girls first appeared on the streets of Britain in the 1950s. They loved rock and roll music and they used to dress like the American teenagers in rock and roll movies. The boys wore long jackets and tight trousers. They wore their hair long at the front. They would put a lot of gel in it and wear it in a quiff. The girls used to wear blazers, trench coats, ties, men's trousers and canes.
  - The hippy fashion started in the late 1960s. It was a very relaxed style and very different from the formal clothes Teds used to wear. Hippies wore loose clothes, with colourful flowery patterns. Men had long hair and beards. Women had long hair too and they used to wear long scarves and Indian jewellery.
- The first punks appeared on the streets of London in the late 1970s. They didn't use to spend a lot of money on clothes. Their favourite colour was black. They wore tight trousers with holes and baggy T-shirts with offensive words and expressions on them. They had dyed hair pink or green or blue and they used to wear dog collars as necklaces and safety-pins as earrings. They decided they would shock people and break the rules.
- D This colourful, creative style started in the early 1980s. New Romantics loved unusual clothes that often looked like costumes from a pirate film and both girls and boys used to wear extravagant make-up. They thought their fashion would be a reaction to the dark side of punk.

**FACT!** Most young people get their ideas for clothes and fashion from friends and classmates and not from magazines or TV.

- 3 Read the text again. Complete the sentences with Teds, Hippies, Punks or New Romantics.
  - 1 Punks didn't like rules.
  - 2 .... copied a style from another country.
  - 3 The styles of both .... and .... developed in reaction to earlier fashions.
  - 4 ....and .... wore clothes with lots of colour.
  - 5 .... and .... had special hairstyles.
  - 6 .... and .... wore tight trousers.
  - 7 .... wanted to look like characters they saw in films.
  - 8 .... were influenced by nature.

# Explore words in context

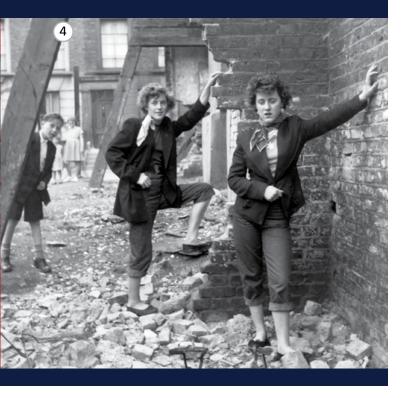
4 Find the words in the text and then look for examples in the photos. Which ones can you see?

quiff ponytail loose clothes dyed hair dog collar safety-pins extravagant make-up

Picture 1: loose clothes

### Your turn

- 5 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - 1 Are any of these fashions still common in Romania? If yes, which? Who wears them?
  - What styles are common among young people today? Do you like them? Why/ Why not?



### used to and would (review)

1 Complete the examples from the text on page 62. Then choose the correct words to complete the rules.

#### used to

- Both boys and girls 1.... to wear extravagant make-up.
- They <sup>2</sup>.... to spend a lot of money on clothes.
- ? What <sup>3</sup>.... the different groups .... to call themselves?
  Did you use to be a hippy?
  Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

#### would

- They <sup>4</sup>... put a lot of gel in it.
   They <sup>5</sup>... paint flowers on their hands and faces.
   Would he break the rules?
   Yes, he would.
   No, he wouldn't.
- We use *used to* and *would* to talk about **single**

events in the past / past habits.

- We only use used to / would with actions. We use used to / would with actions, states and feelings (be, have, live, love, want, care, etc.).
- Grammar reference page 124
- **2** Complete the text with the correct form of *used to*. Use the verbs in brackets.

When my dad was a student, he ¹ <u>used to be</u> (be) a New Romantic. He and his friends ²... (go) to concerts together all the time. They ³... (like) wearing really extravagant clothes. They ⁴... (dress) as pirates and paint their faces. He ⁵... (have) long, blond hair, but then he started working in a bank in the city and he 6... (not go out) so much. He forgot about all the things he 7... (love) doing with his friends. Now he looks completely different!



#### Your turn

4 Is your life very different now? Write sentences with *used to* and *would* to describe the differences between your life now and when you were nine.

When I was nine, I used to spend a lot of time with my parents. Now I spend more time with my friends.

### • Future in the past

- Complete the examples from the text on page62. Then complete the rules.
  - 1 They decided they ... people and break the rules.
  - 2 They thought their fashion .... a reaction to the dark side of punk.
  - We use future in the past to talk about .... actions, events or plans from a time in the ....
  - To form the future in the past, we use would + the bare infinitive of the ....
- 6 Complete the sentences with the future in the past form of the verbs in brackets.
  - 1 James decided he <u>would stay</u> (stay) at home for the summer holiday.
  - 2 They expected she .... (apologise) for arriving late at the concert.
  - 3 We thought Sarah .... (wear) one of her extravagant outfits at the party.
  - **4** Everyone hoped the fashion event .... (be) a success.
  - 5 I knew you .... (become) a fashion designer one day. You had so much talent from the very beginning!
  - 6 She hadn't imagined she .... (look) prettier after changing her loose clothes with unusual ones.

# Learn about fashion shows and being a top model.

- What do you know about Milan?
- Do you know the names of any famous Italian designers?
- Would you like to work as a catwalk model? Why/Why not?





Milan fashion week

# **Listening** An interview

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos and the poster and answer the questions.
  - 1 Do you know anything about the film?
  - 2 What do you think is the connection between the film and the two photos?
  - 3 How has the world changed in the last 40 years?
- 2 Listen to an interview with a young actor, David, who is taking part in a theatre production of the film. Check your answers.
- 3 **(1)** Listen again and choose the correct options.
  - 1 The film first came out in 1980 / 1985.
  - In the film, Marty travels from the 1950s to the 1980s / 1980s to the 1950s.
  - 3 In the theatre production, Marty travels from 2015 to the **1980s / 1950s**.
  - 4 The theatre production focuses on life now / in the past.
  - 5 David's parents were teenagers in the 1950s / 1980s.
  - 6 Teenagers were / weren't interested in the same things in the 1980s as they are now.
  - 7 There were / weren't any touchscreens in the 1980s.
  - 8 The presenter has / hasn't seen the show.

## Your turn

- 4 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - 1 Would you like to see the film or the show? Why/Why not?
  - 2 Would you like to travel back in time to see your parents when they were teenagers?
  - 3 Do you think their lives were very different from yours? If yes, in what way?







# **Vocabulary** Adjectives and dependent prepositions

- Choose the correct prepositions to complete the sentences from the interview. Then listen and check.
  - 1 I was really excited **about** / in working on the show.
  - 2 I'm fascinated about / by that side of the show ...
  - 3 ... what teenagers were interested of / in then ...
  - 4 ... teenagers were keen by / on the same things, like ...
  - 5 ... some people have been a little disappointed by / of the show.
  - 6 ... we're really happy in / with it ...
  - 7 ... and proud of / on all our hard work.
  - 8 We aren't afraid in / of criticism you know!

### Your turn

Write five sentences that you think are true for your partner. Use some of the adjectives and prepositions from Exercise 5.

I think you were disappointed by the result of the football match last night.

7 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions to find out if the sentences you wrote in Exercise 6 are correct.

Were you disappointed by the result of the football match last night?

No, I wasn't! My team won 3-0!

Vocabulary bank • page 134

# Past perfect simple

1 Complete the examples from the listening on page 64. Then answer the questions in the box.

had hadn't (x2) seen thought

- + I had always wanted to be in a big show.
- I<sup>1</sup>....really ....about it before.
- <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_you \_\_\_\_it before you started on the production? Yes, I **had seen** it twice. No, I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_**seen** it.
- 1 What do you use the past perfect simple to talk about?a an action that happened before another actionb an action that happened after another action
- 2 Which tense do you use to talk about the most recent of two past actions?
  - a the past simple b the past perfect simple
- Grammar reference pages 124–125
- 2 Choose the correct form of the verbs in the sentences below.
  - 1 My brother (told) / had told me about a new band yesterday. I didn't hear / hadn't heard of them before.
  - When I got to the party last night, Jo went / had gone home, so I didn't see / hadn't seen her.
  - 3 We went to a great burger bar last weekend. I wasn't / hadn't been there before. The food was / had been really good.
  - 4 I arrived / 'd arrived late for football last week, the match started / had started when I got there and the coach didn't let me play!
- Complete the text with the correct form of the past simple or past perfect. Use the verbs in the box. Then listen and check.

get on not let wait have want sell out ask say put up see arrive be

The concert last night ¹.was. absolutely fantastic. We ²... to see the band for a very long time, so when we ³.... a poster of the concert two months ago at a bus stop, we were very excited. We ⁴... our parents if we could go and they ⁵... yes! They 6... us go to a concert on our own before and we were really excited.

A month later, we <sup>7</sup>.... a train to go and buy the tickets. We <sup>8</sup>.... at the ticket office the night before with a tent. A lot of other people <sup>9</sup>.... their tents on the street before us. The next day, we <sup>10</sup>.... for five hours until at last we <sup>11</sup>.... the tickets in our hands. Five minutes later, all the tickets <sup>12</sup>....! We were so lucky! And the concert was brilliant.

Say it right! • page 117

# Past perfect continuous

- 4 Look at the examples from the listening on page 64. Then choose the correct words to complete the rules.
  - By the time he was 16, David had been acting on stage for several years.
  - The producers had been working on this project long before we met.
  - We'd been working so hard on this play, I felt we hadn't seen daylight for months!

We use the past perfect continuous to talk about <sup>1</sup> a **present / past** event that was in progress up to a certain point in the <sup>2</sup> **present / past**, and to focus on <sup>3</sup> **how long / how often** it had been happening.

- Grammar reference page 125
- 5 Complete the conversation with the past perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.
  - A: I had a terrible migraine last week.
  - **B:** Oh, no! What <sup>1</sup> .... (do)?
  - A: <sup>2</sup>.... (rehearse) for my new play. It was on Friday. I <sup>3</sup>.... (not do) it long when I felt pain in my head and my eyes suddenly got blurry. When I finally saw the doctor, I <sup>4</sup>.... (wait) for two hours! He was late because he <sup>5</sup>.... (operate) on another patient. But he was able to help me. I feel better now.

# Past perfect continuous vs. past continuous

- 6 Look at the example sentences and complete the rule.
  - Kim met Sam when she was going out with his cousin.
  - I first met them when they had been going out for two years.

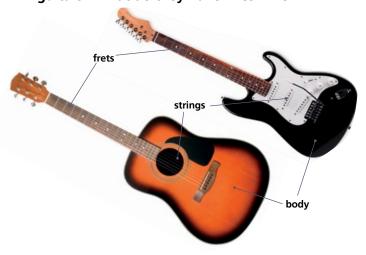
We can use the past continuous instead of the past perfect continuous if we **are / aren't** interested in how long the activity went on before a particular past time.

- Grammar reference page 125
- 7 Choose the correct form of the verbs in the sentences below.
  - 1 He heard noises upstairs. The cat was / had been playing.
  - 2 Paul went into the bedroom. There was no one there but the TV was still on. Someone was / had been watching it.
  - 3 I was / had been playing the piano when the phone rang.
  - 4 I can't feel my legs. I was / 'd been walking all day.



# Discover culture

1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos. What's the main difference between the two quitars? What do they have in common?



#### Work with a partner. Discuss these questions.

- 1 In what kind of places can you see the two different types of guitar?
- **2** What kind of people do you associate with each type of guitar?

Traditional guitar: classical musician ... Electric guitar: pop star ...

Find out about how guitars are made.



#### 3 Watch the video. What is the main focus?

- a The history of both types of guitars
- **b** How an electric guitar works
- c How an electric guitar is made

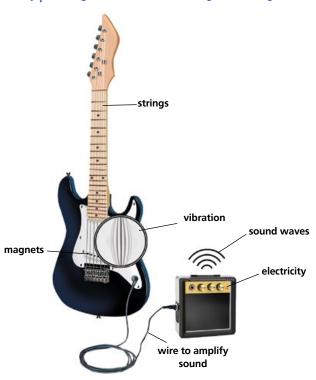
# 4 Test your memory. Can you answer the questions?

- 1 Which type of guitar is shown first?
- 2 Where do we first see traditional guitars?
- 3 Which kind of guitar is produced in the factory?
- 4 What part of the guitar is made by machines?
- 5 Which parts are added by hand?
- 6 What do we see in the last shot?
- Watch the video again and check your answers.



# Look at the diagram. Can you explain how an electric guitar works?

They put magnets under the strings. The magnets ...



**7** Watch the video from 02.10 to 02.37 and check your answers.

### Your turn

#### 8 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- 1 Do you play the guitar or know anyone who plays the guitar? What type of guitar do they play?
- 2 Do you often see people playing the guitar or other musical instruments, on the street in your town?
- 3 Have you ever learned to play an instrument? If yes, what and why? Do you still play it? If no, which instrument would you like to learn to play? Why?



# Retro BRITAIN

There are lots of icons which represent the UK, but some only symbolise the Britain of the past ...

### THE BEATLES

The 'Fab Four', the most popular guitar band of all time, are known and loved all over the world! They released their first album more than 60 years ago, but their songs are still as popular as ever. The band went through a number of style changes over the years from 1959 to 1970, but this image of the young band in their cool suits and short hairstyles would remain the most iconic.

### THE RED TELEPHONE BOX

The first telephone box was designed in the 1920s, when very few people had telephones at home. People rarely use them, but they still decorate some street corners, especially in tourist areas. You used to put a penny into it to make a call. In the 1930s, domestic phones appeared, but they didn't have a keypad like modern phones, in fact they looked something like this. People used to get tired of dialling the numbers!

### THE MINI

In 1959, the most famous car in the British motor industry arrived: the Mini! It was a car popular with both the rich and the famous – everybody loved the Mini. Before production stopped in 2000, nearly six million people had bought one and had been driving one! Now there is a new Mini on the streets, but it's not British any more – it's German! The first Mini cost just £500. Nobody thought the new German Mini would cost as much as £29,253 later on!

**United Kingdom** 

### THE BLACK CAB

The London cab is the icon that has survived the longest, but, of course, the design has changed a lot! The first cabs, introduced in the 17<sup>th</sup> century, were pulled by horses. Although traditionally black, they also come in other colours, including gold! Nowadays, more and more cabs are being covered all over in advertising. Today, you can also travel in them in other world cities, but it will cost you a little more than the original taxi fare of sixpence!

# **Reading** A magazine article

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos. What do they show? Do you think all these things are still common or popular in the UK?
- 2 Read the magazine article and check your answers.
- 3 Read the article again. What do the four icons have in common?
  - a Their appearance has changed a lot over time.
  - **b** They are all icons from the 20<sup>th</sup> century.
  - c They've all survived as icons for at least 50 years.

### Explore compound nouns

Match words from box A with words from box B to form compound nouns. Then find the compound nouns in the text and check your answers.

A quitar style telephone street motor taxi

B box corners band industry fare changes

**FACT!** There used to be 80,000 red telephone boxes in the UK, but there aren't many of them left now.

- Which words from the list do not combine with the words in bold to form compound nouns?
  - 1 guitar: string, bag, music
  - 2 style: icon, consultant, model
  - 3 telephone: call, number, name
  - 4 street: house, art, fashion
  - **5** motor: show, vehicle, driver
  - 6 taxi: cab, driver, call
- Vocabulary bank page 134

### Your turn

- 6 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - 1 What people or objects are icons in Romania?
  - 2 When did they first become popular?
  - 3 Are they still popular nowadays?
  - 4 Do you think they are positive symbols of your country and culture? Why/Why not?

I think the most famous pop group is probably ...

On the streets in Romania, there are lots of ...



# **Real talk:** What music and fashion were your parents into when they were growing up?



1 Watch the teenagers in the video. Match the sentences (1–6) with the music or people in the box.

disco the Beatles punk Michael Jackson <del>classical and pop</del> no music

- 1 My parents liked really different things. classical and pop
- 2 They were more into fashion, especially my mum.
- 3 There are no photos, so I don't really know.
- 4 My grandmother still remembers seeing a famous group.
- 5 They still listen to the music and do the dances!
- 6 They looked the same and wore the same clothes.
- 2 What music and fashion are you into?
- 3 Listen to Olivia and her friend Raquel. What does Olivia buy?
- 4 Complete the conversation with the phrases in the *Useful language* box.

#### **Useful language**

How about this top? You look great! Where are the changing rooms? They're my size, too. Do you think the top suits me? They don't fit very well.

Olivia: Right, I'm looking for a top for your party, and

maybe a pair of jeans.

Raquel: OK. 1 How about this top? You look good

in purple.

Olivia: Yes, it's really pretty. Oh, these are nice jeans and

2...., too. This style is in at the moment. What do

you think?

Raquel: Mmm. I'm not so sure. Why don't you try them on?

Olivia: OK. Where <sup>3</sup>...?

Raquel: Over there on the right. Come on!

Olivia: So, do you think 4....?

Raquel: Yes, you 5....!

Olivia: Yes, I like it too, and it's half price. I think I'll get it.

Raquel: What about the jeans?

Olivia: They don't suit me, and they don't 6..... They're a

bit tight.

Raquel: Yeah, I see what you mean. What a shame!

Olivia: Never mind, maybe we'll see some in the next shop.

Raquel: You're joking! I think I've had enough!



- 6 Work with a partner. Practise the conversation in Exercise 4.
- Work with a partner. Plan your own conversation. Use the ideas below and Exercise 4 to help you.



You want to buy a new shirt, blouse or top for an endof-school party. You look good in blue.



You want to buy a new pair of jeans or trousers for the school disco next weekend. You prefer black.

# Writing An essay

#### 1 Look at the photo and read the essay. Choose the best title.

- a How much does fashion influence the lives of teenagers today?
- **b** Are teenagers too dependent on fashion?

These days, fashion is an integral part of teenagers' lives. Every week clothes shops come out with new clothing items designed for them and the younger generations (among them the Millennials and Gen Z) that are willing to follow the latest fashionable trends by purchasing clothes and accessories. Teenagers are indeed very concerned about their looks and sometimes they even obsess over brands and over a certain image they want to promote about themselves. But is it a good thing that fashion means so much to them nowadays? In my opinion, this has both its pros and cons.

Firstly, fashion is a very good way for teenagers to express themselves, to get themselves noticed and make friends. What's more, fashion helps teenagers find out who they are and feel more confident about who they are and what they like. In this regard, celebrities have a big impact on teenage fashion. Teenagers choose their role models among music artists and actors via social media and fashion shows, and that helps them find inspiration and maybe create their own style. Who hasn't hoped they would have the looks of their favourite superstar or even be famous one day? However, not all of the teenagers know how to choose those models. Personally, I think some of them are a bad influence through vulgarity and too much skin showed on stage.

On the other hand, fashion can easily become an addiction when it turns out to be more than a way to look nice and attractive to others. Many teenagers have involved themselves so much with fashion that they don't have time for anything else. Looking trendy and cool among people of their age is their main purpose, so they spend most of their time reading fashion magazines, watching shows and shopping. They wear certain brands because they feel that if they didn't, they wouldn't be worthy enough. Just because other teenagers have the latest brand and you don't, doesn't mean you aren't special!

To sum up, I believe using fashion as a tool to express yourself, look nice, confident and attractive to others is fine, whereas being a brand addict to please others, pretending to be someone else just to fit in is wrong.

# 2 Read the essay again and identify which paragraph each of these points is in.

- a a personal opinion (two paragraphs)
- **b** a summary of the arguments
- c an argument in favour of your opinion
- d another argument to support your opinion

### **Useful language**

#### **Linking phrases**

We use linking words and phrases to show contrast: Using fashion as ... is fine, **whereas** being a brand addict is ... or to show the order of arguments:

Firstly, fashion is a very good way for teenagers to ...

# 3 Find the words or phrases in the text for each category in the *Useful language* box.

4 Complete the sentences with the phrases in the box.

however what's more whereas

- 1 Wearing brand clothes is cool. .... not everyone has the money to buy them.
- 2 .... Gen X prefers fast fashion, Generations Y and Z are more into ecofriendly fashion. ...., Gen Y and Z are also very selective when it comes to fabrics and where the clothes are made.



# Get writing – Portfolio

#### PLAN

- 5 Plan an essay for one of the titles below. Use Exercise 2 to help you decide what to put in each paragraph.
  - Is fast fashion bad for the planet?
  - Should eco-friendly fashion be encouraged?

#### WRITE

6 Write your essay.
Use your notes from
Exercise 5 and the
model text to help you.
Then add your essay to
your portfolio.

#### CHECK

- 7 Can you say YES to these questions?
  - Have you included all the essential information from Exercise 2?
  - Have you used linking words and phrases to show contrast and show the order of arguments?



In this unit ...



**Objects for** survival p73



An invention that changed everything p76



Favourite gadgets p78



**CLIL** What a waste! **p153** 

- Vocabulary
   Everyday objects
- Words in context
- Modifiers
- Communication phrases and phrasal verbs

#### Language focus

- The passive voices: present simple, past simple and will
- Relative pronouns





# L GHT IN A BOTTLE!



This is such a simple idea! It's a light bulb that needs no electricity, no plugs, no cables and costs absolutely nothing to **run**. It wasn't invented by a famous scientist, but by a local man in Brazil more than twenty years ago. In his hometown at the time, they had problems with electricity and people's homes and small businesses were often



**left in the dark**. One day, Alfredo Moser and his friends were talking about how they could create a signal in an emergency. One of them suggested using a bottle to reflect the light from the sun. This made Moser think. Why not use water to make light?

All you need is a clean plastic bottle. Fill it with water from the tap and close it with a black top. The black top protects the bottle cap from the harmful effects of the UV. A drop of **bleach**, the kind you use to clean the house, is added to the water to keep it clean. Then a small hole is cut in the roof of the room where you want the light, and the bottle is pushed through the hole. While there's sunlight outside, the light will be carried through the water into the room below. And it's much stronger than the light from a candle!

Moser shared his idea with his neighbours and his light bottles were installed in the local supermarket. Years later, an organisation in the Philippines heard about Moser's idea. The MyShelter Foundation helps people in poor areas and **specialises** in building houses using recycled materials. Now there are Moser lamps in more than 140,000 homes throughout the Philippines and the idea has **spread** to a number of other countries, too. In India, the bottles are used in rural schools and to grow food. In Bangladesh, the lights are installed in small businesses. Moser has not made a lot of money from his invention, but his lamps have definitely made life easier for a lot of people!

**Reading** A news article

1 Look at the photo and the headline. What everyday object can you see? Where is it? Why is it there?

3 Read the article again and complete the fact sheet.

Invention: 1 a light bulb that works without electricity
Inventor: 2...

Nationality of inventor: 3....

Reason for invention: In the inventor's town, they often didn't have 4....

How the invention works: You fill a plastic bottle with 5.... and close it with 6..... You put the bottle in a 7.... in the 8.... of the building.

Countries that use it: the Philippines, India and 9....

Places where people use it: local supermarkets, rural schools and <sup>10</sup>...

Explore words in context

**FACT!** Around 200 million people in India still have no access to electricity in their homes.

- 4 Match the highlighted words in the article with the definitions.
  - 1 extend to a lot of different places spread
  - 2 be without light
  - 3 make something work
  - 4 simple cleaning liquid
  - 5 spend most of your time doing one type of activity

# Your turn

5 Work in pairs. Can you think of any other uses for plastic bottles or other everyday objects?

My mum grows plants in used plastic bottles on our balcony.

# Language focus 1 • The passive voice: present simple, past simple and will

1 Complete the examples from the text on page 72. Then match the beginnings and the ends of the sentences to complete the rules.

#### **Present simple**

- + A small hole 1... in the roof.
- Moser lamps aren't used in the UK.
- ? How much electricity **is saved** with these lamps?

#### Past simple

- Their homes were often left in the dark.
- It <sup>2</sup>....by a famous scientist.
- ? Was any special equipment needed to make it?

#### will

- + The light <sup>3</sup>....through the water.
- Normal light bulbs **won't be** completely **replaced** by Moser lamps.
- ? Will Moser lamps be used in the new school?
- 1 We use the passive when it
- 2 To form the passive,
- 3 When we want to say who is responsible for an action in the passive,
- a the verb be + past participle.
- **b** we use the preposition *bv*.
- c isn't important to know who's responsible for the action.

# Grammar reference • page 126

# 2 Complete the second sentence in each pair using a passive form of the verb in bold.

- 1 a Alexander Parkes invented plastic in 1862.
  - **b** Plastic <u>was invented</u> by Alexander Parkes in 1862.
- 2 a Various companies will develop a number of different types of plastic over the next 70 years.
  - **b** A number of different types of plastic .... over the next 70 years.
- **a** Drinks companies **didn't introduce** the first commercial plastic bottles until 1937.
  - **b** The first commercial plastic bottles .... until 1937.
- **4** a People in the USA **consume** drinks from 1,500 plastic bottles every second.
  - **b** 1,500 drinks in plastic bottles .... by people in the USA every second.
- 5 a Steel water bottles will replace plastic bottles in the next twenty years.
  - **b** Plastic bottles .... by steel water bottles in the next twenty years.
- a In 50 years' time, shops won't sell bottled water.b In 50 years' time, bottled water .... in shops.

# Choose the correct form of the verbs in the texts below. Then listen and check.

These running shorts ¹made / are made from coffee beans.
Can you believe it? They're not only great to look at, but a special chemical in the coffee means that they also ²protect you / are protected from the sun. What a great recycling idea!

Recycled cork bottle tops <sup>3</sup>used / were used to make this pretty curtain. It <sup>4</sup>helps / is helped to keep out flies and is really cheap and easy to make. In 1,000 years' time, scientists will <sup>5</sup>find / be found the remains of billions of bottles. They will <sup>6</sup>study /





be studied and they'll <sup>7</sup>display / be displayed in museums. But nobody will <sup>8</sup>understand / be understood what we <sup>9</sup>used / were used them for!

## Your turn – An investigation

## 4 Think of three objects for each category.

- Things that were invented in the last 100 years.
- Things that are used daily in schools and homes.
- Things that will be invented in the next 20 years.

# Work with a partner. Compare your lists and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you know when they were invented and by whom?
- 2 Which object in each category do you think is the most important? Why?

I think the internet was invented in the 1980s.

#### Check your results!

Through this activity you were able to:

- answer the questions clearly and correctly.
- follow the steps given. □
- work in a team. 🖵

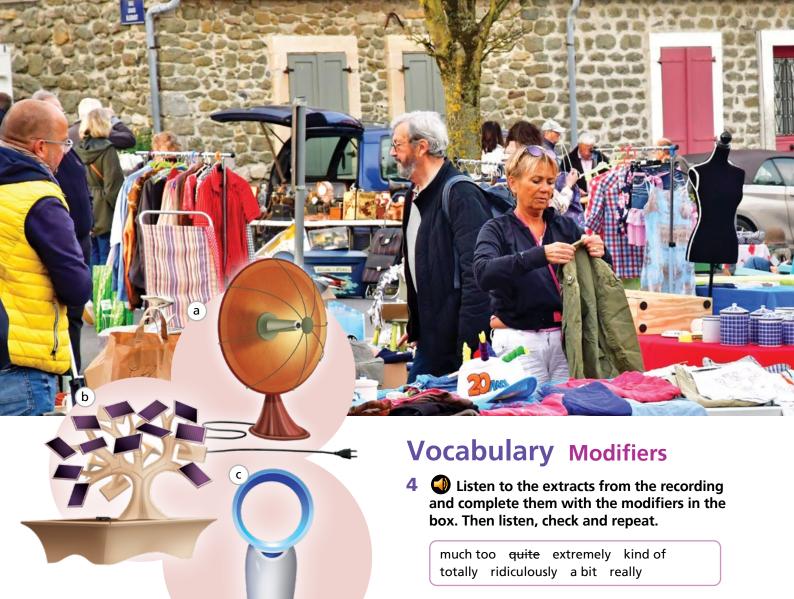
#### Learn about surviving in the mountains.

- Where do you think the photo was taken?
- Have you ever been on an expedition in the mountains?
- What equipment would you need to survive a night on the side of this mountain?





**Objects for survival** 



# **Listening** A radio report

- Work with a partner. Look at the objects in the pictures (a-c) and guess what they are used for. Which do you think is a) the most expensive and b) the cheapest?
- - 1 These objects have two purposes. .a., ....
  - 2 These objects are quite expensive. ..., ....
  - 3 The reporter buys this object. ....
  - 4 This object is unique. ....
  - **5** This object comes in different colours. ....
  - 6 This object is the oldest and the first one to be invented. . . .

- 1 The heater/light combination: That's *quite* unusual.
- 2 The heater: That's ... hot!
- 3 The price of the heater: That was ... expensive!
- 4 The solar trees: They look .... stylish.
- **5** The solar trees: They are ... pretty.
- 6 The price of the chargers: They're ... expensive.
- **7** The third stall: This stall looks .... better.
- 8 The fan: It's ... safe.
- 5 Look at the modifiers again. Do they make the adjectives a) a little stronger or b) a lot stronger?

# Your turn

6 Think of an object you own and match it to three expressions from Exercise 4. Then work with a partner and explain your choice.

I've got a solar travel charger. It's really useful. It's extremely small and ...

**② Vocabulary bank •** page 135



# Language focus 2

# Relative pronouns

- 1 Choose the correct words to complete the examples from the listening on page 74.
  Then answer the questions in the box.
  - 1 It's a great market where/ who you can find all kinds of unusual things.
  - 2 The heat comes from the light bulb in the middle and it's reflected by this part whose / which you can see here.
  - 3 I need something that / where I can put on my desk.
  - 4 I wonder where the person that / whose stall it is can be?
  - 5 The guy where / who you can see in the photo is a friend of mine.
  - 6 I don't think the guy that / which I was talking to is going to sell a lot of battery chargers!

#### Which pronouns refer to ...

- a an object (two pronouns)?
- **b** a place?
- c a person (two pronouns)?
- d a possession?
- Grammar reference page 126

# 2 Make one sentence from the two sentences given using one of the relative pronouns in brackets.



- 1 This is the stall. I buy second-hand computer games here. (where/which)

  This is the stall where I buy second-hand computer games.
- 2 This is the birthday present. My brother gave it to me. (that/who)
- 3 I really like the woman. I met her at the market. (who/which)
- 4 That's the man. I bought his bike last week. (who/whose)
- 5 Can you remember the name of the boy? We talked to him here last week. (that/ whose)
- 6 I really don't think much of the restaurant. We ate there last night. (that/where)

#### Get it right!

When the relative pronoun is the subject of the verb that follows, we don't need a subject pronoun.

A grey shirt **that** it cost £20 ... The man **who** he works on this stall ...

- Write sentences using the prompts and the relative pronouns in brackets. Make any other necessary changes.
  - 1 This / be / person / I / tell / you about / yesterday (that)
  - 2 I / not like / new teacher / just start / teaching Art (who)
  - 3 My favourite market stall / be / one / you / can see / on the left (which)
  - 4 My aunt / have / a friend / sell / handmade jewellery / in the market (that)
  - 5 I / see / that girl / party / we / go / last night (whose)
  - 6 Over there / be / shop / my brother / work / at weekends (where)
- Say it right! page 117

# Your turn

- 4 Choose a person, an object and a place. Write definitions of them using who, which, where or whose, but don't say what they are!
- Work with a partner. Read each other your definitions from Exercise 4 and guess what they're defining.

He's an interesting person who gets involved in a lot of adventures.



# **Discover culture**

1 Work with a partner. Write a definition of the internet. Use the words in the box to help you.

websites mobile phones social networks communication wi-fi connections

Find out about the invention of the internet.







An invention that changed everything

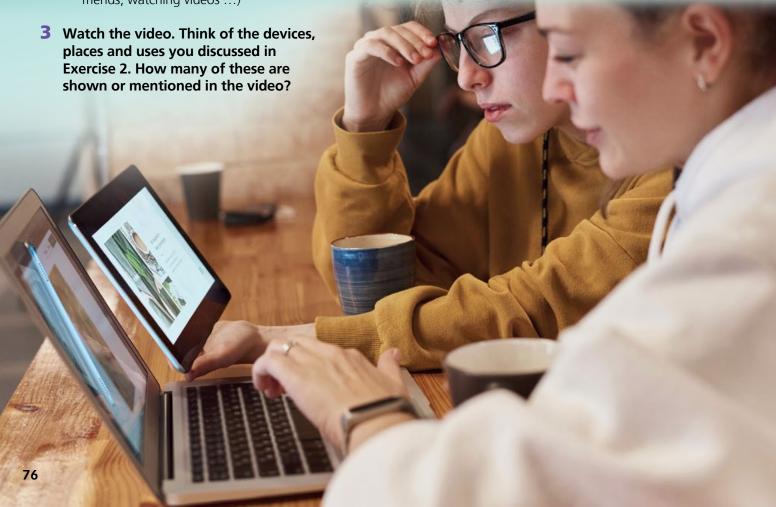
- 2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - 1 What kind of device do you usually use to go on the internet? (phone, tablet, computer, console ...)
  - 2 Where do you usually go on the internet? (at home, in your room, on the bus, at school ...)
  - What do you usually use the internet for? (searching for information, chatting with friends, watching videos ...)

# 4 Test your memory. Can you put the events in order?

- 1 Computers become smaller and cheaper.
- 2 More and more computers connect with each other and the World Wide Web is formed.
- 3 Scientists begin to use computers for many things. 1
- 4 We use the internet for everything: work, study and play.
- 5 The computers are big, slow and expensive.
- 6 The first computer network, Arpanet, allows computers to communicate with each other.
- 7 The first email is sent.
- 8 The internet becomes bigger, faster and more social.
- Watch the video again and check your answers to Exercise 4.

## Your turn

- 6 In groups, think of another invention that has changed everything. Discuss the questions.
  - 1 Why is/was it so important?
  - 2 When was it invented?
  - 3 What exactly did it change/has it changed?
  - 4 Over what period of time?
  - 5 How does it affect your everyday life?



# IS FACEBOOK UNCOOL?



Can you imagine life without Facebook, Instagram or Snapchat? You know, those places where you find out all the stuff that your friends do every day?

Amazingly, if you'd been a teen pre-2004, when Facebook started, you wouldn't have known the meaning of 'social networks'. Thirty years ago, people kept in touch by phone.

Texting, Tweeting with Twitter (now X), making a WhatsApp video call, instant messaging with Snapchat and emailing didn't exist or weren't widely used. But today, things are different and Facebook has become the world's most popular way to keep in touch with colleagues, catch up with friends and family or track down people you have lost touch with. But is its popularity making it uncool?

Facebook began life at Harvard University and was initially only open to students. Mark Zuckerberg, who started the platform, wanted Facebook to make the world more open and connected. He hadn't planned on it being

Reading An article

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photo and the title of the article. What do you think the article will be about?
  - 1 The success of social networks.
  - 2 How social networks have changed the world.
  - 3 The changing popularity and identity of social networks.
- 2 Read the article and check your answer.
- 3 Read the article again. Mark the sentences true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.

According to the article ...

- the first social network appearedyears ago.
- 2 people all around the world use Facebook.
- 3 Facebook was originally for students.
- 4 a lot of teens are happy to have their parents as Facebook friends.
- 5 Instagram is better than Facebook for finding out about news.
- 6 the blogger is sure about what will be the social network of the future.

a successful company. Interestingly, it is now more popular with older and professional users than students. So, does that mean it's uncool for teens?

Well, it's true some of the same students who loved it so much at the beginning have now turned to other social networks. And what is the reason that teens are using Facebook less? Parents! Parents see Facebook as a way to keep the family together and to keep an eye on their kids! And of course, they also use it to **chat** with friends and check out what they are doing. But many teens think, 'The day your mum sends you a friend request, you know it's time to leave!' and want a social network that will keep them separate from their family.

Currently, Instagram may have an advantage over Facebook, at least for younger users. Like many social networks, it updates its image regularly, it has cool photo filters, it is more dynamic, posts are shorter and news spreads more quickly there. But for how long? Who knows what the next platform will bring? All the ones we know now may be out of date by the

**FACT!** Facebook now has around 1.44 billion monthly active users worldwide. That is 50 million more users than the population of China!

time you read this!

# phrasal verbs

- 4 Match the highlighted words and phrases in the article with the definitions.
  - 1 five verbs describing different forms of communication/ expressions using technology Texting, Tweeting with Twitter, ...
  - 2 two expressions meaning to a) maintain contact and b) not maintain contact with people
  - 3 two phrasal verbs meaning to a) find a person you have not seen in a long time and b) find out some news about them
  - 4 one verb meaning to talk casually or talk on a social network
- **♦ Vocabulary bank •** page 135

# Your turn

- 5 How do you prefer to keep in touch with friends and family? Put these in order of preference. Compare your answers.
  - Telephone call
  - Social network (e.g. Facebook)
- WhatsApp, FaceTime or similar
- Texting
- Instant messaging

I don't like making telephone calls any more, it's like you're always interrupting somebody when you call.

I agree! And WhatsApp is more fun too!

# **Speaking** Buying a gadget

## Real talk: What's your favourite gadget?



- 1 Watch the teenagers in the video. What is each person's favourite gadget and why?

  tablet she can take it everywhere with her, it's better than a mobile phone because it's got a nicer camera

- 4 Complete the conversation with the phrases in the *Useful language* box.

## **Useful language**

How much memory ...?

Can you tell me about this ...?

How long does the battery last?

Has it got a(n) ...?

Could you show me ...?

What's (the sound) like?

Is it (easy to use)?

Casey: Excuse me. <sup>1</sup> Can you tell me about this

smartphone?

**Assistant:** Yes, of course. What would you like to know?

Casey: Well, <sup>2</sup>... does it have?

Assistant: It's only got 4GB of memory, but you can get

up to 64GB with a memory card.

Casey: OK. And is it <sup>3</sup>...?

Assistant: Yes, very easy. And it's fast, too.

Casey: Oh, right! 4.... front-facing camera?

Assistant: Yes. The camera is 5 megapixels, with an LED

flash. Fantastic for selfies!

Casey: 5....? For music, I mean.

Assistant: Very good, I think.

Casey: Right. How long 6...?

**Assistant:** About eight hours of talk time.

**Casey:** Only eight hours? That's not very long! **Assistant:** No, perhaps not. But in general it's a good

phone for the price.

Casey: Mmm. Could 7.... that one, please?



- 5 Listen again and check your answers.
- 6 Work with a partner. Practise the conversation in Exercise 4.
- Work with a partner. Plan your own conversation. Use the ideas below and Exercise 4 to help you.

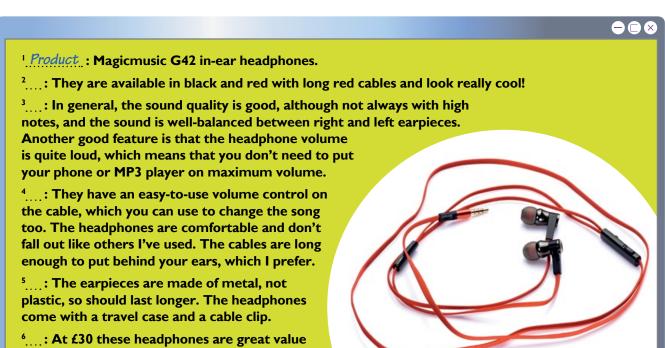






# Writing An online review

1 Read Kris's review of headphones. Does she think they are good?



2 Read the review again. Match the headings in the box to the text. Is the order of the headings important?

for money, and perfect for me!

Design Ease of use Overall opinion Performance Product Extra features

# **Useful language**

#### **Describing a product**

When we write a product review, we include phrases for describing a product.

- They are made of metal.
- It comes in black or red.
- You can use it to change songs.
- 3 Look at the *Useful language* box. Find other phrases in the review that describe the headphones.
- 4 Complete the sentences with the phrases in the box.

come with available in made of comes in look

- 1 This e-reader .... two sizes, 7 inch and 8.9 inch.
- 2 The new smartphone models are ... metallic green, pink or blue, but they ... quite cheap.
- 3 The outside of this games console is .... aluminium and it looks amazing!
- 4 These tablets .... a colourful travel case.



# Get writing - Portfolio

#### PLAN

5 Choose a product to write an online review of. Use the headings in Exercise 2 and make notes.

#### WRITE

6 Write your review. Use your notes from Exercise 5 and the model text to help you.

#### CHECK

- 7 Can you say YES to these questions?
  - Have you included all six headings to organise your review?
  - Have you used phrases to describe the product?

# 56 Review

# Vocabulary

## 1 Complete the descriptions of the clothes.







2 a s \_ \_ \_ scarf



**3** f shoes



4 as dress



**5** a c \_ \_ \_ hat



**6** b \_ \_ \_ jeans



**7** a f \_ \_ \_ \_ skirt



**8** a f \_ \_ \_ jacket

# 2 Complete the text with the words in the box. You can use some of the words more than once.

of by on <del>about</del> with

We were really excited <sup>1</sup> <u>about</u> entering the online fashion competition. I'm fascinated <sup>2</sup> fashion design and I'm really keen <sup>3</sup> the latest British designers. A group of us at school created some designs especially for teenagers. We were really happy <sup>4</sup> our work and proud <sup>5</sup> our creative designs! So we were a bit disappointed <sup>6</sup> the winning entry – it wasn't original at all. Still, we aren't afraid <sup>7</sup> hard work and we're ready to try again next year.

# 3 Match the objects with their functions. There are three words you don't need to use.

remote control tap <del>charger</del> switch fan heater light bulb plug matches

We use this to ...

- 1 recharge our phones. *charger*
- 2 make a room brighter.
- 3 switch on the TV.
- **4** turn on the water.
- 5 turn on a light.
- 6 make a room hotter.

## 4 Complete the sentences with modifiers.

- 1 This solar heater turns itself on and off automatically it's q <u>u i t e</u> unusual.
- 2 This mouse costs €200 that's r\_\_\_\_\_ y expensive!
- 3 My mum has a new travel DVD player for the car it's e \_ \_ \_ useful.
- **4** That fan doesn't work very well it's k \_ \_ \_ o \_ old-fashioned.
- 5 The heater isn't working the classroom is m \_ \_ \_ t \_ \_ cold.
- 6 I can't do this exercise it's t \_ \_ \_ \_ impossible!

# Explore vocabulary

## 5 Choose the correct words.

- 1 I want to cut my hair really short and have a complete style change/icon!
- 2 My brother works as a taxi cab / driver.
- 3 Have you seen the graffiti on the street **corner** / **art** over there?
- 4 Can I call you tonight? What's your telephone call / number?
- 5 I couldn't practise because one of my guitar strings / bands had broken.
- 6 My brother and I went to a motor show / industry last weekend.

#### 6 Complete the text with the words in the box.

email texting WhatsApp chatting track keep <del>lose</del>

I use social media a lot because I don't want to 1.lose. touch with my friends. It's great that I can 2... in touch with people who live far away and we can see each other when we make a 3... video call. I like 4... with my friends on Snapchat because it's easy and fast to send short messages to a lot of people at once. Our teachers get angry if they see us 5... with our phones in class, so we always keep our phones in our bags, of course! If I want to send a longer message about something more serious, I generally 6.... Some people use Facebook to 7... down their old friends, but I've never done that.

# Language focus

# 1 Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

Joe: Granddad, where did you <sup>1</sup> use/ used

to live when you were little?

Granddad: We <sup>2</sup>wouldn't / didn't use to live in

a large town. We <sup>3</sup>used to / would live in the country. I <sup>4</sup>used / would go to school by bike. I hoped we <sup>5</sup>will / would have a school bus but we never

had one.

Joe: Did you <sup>6</sup>use / used to wear a uniform?

Granddad: Yes, we <sup>7</sup>would / did but I <sup>8</sup>didn't use

to / wouldn't like it very much!

Joe: <sup>9</sup>Did they use to / Would they be very

strict at your school in those days?

Granddad: Oh yes! They 10 used / would get very

angry if we didn't obey the rules, and we <sup>11</sup>would / use to have to stay late at school or do extra homework.

#### 2 Complete the text with the correct form of the past simple or past perfect. Use the verbs in brackets.

I had a terrible day yesterday! I ¹. <code>got.</code> (get) home at 5 p.m. and I ².... (not finish) my dinner when the phone ³.... (ring). It was Annabel. I ⁴.... (forget) that we ⁵.... (arrange) to go to the cinema together! So I ⁶.... (run) out of the house and ¬.... (take) a taxi to the cinema. Five minutes too late! The film в.... (start) and they  $^9$ .... (not let) me in!

#### 3 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Wewere watching / had been watching the concert on TV when the lights went off last night.
- 2 I was playing / had been playing the guitar for an hour when the phone rang.
- We didn't hear the doorbell because we were sleeping / had been sleeping.
- 4 The cat was sleeping / had been sleeping all morning on the sofa.
- 5 Tim was tired because he was cleaning / had been cleaning the house all day.

#### 4 Join the sentences using a relative pronoun.

- 1 That is the woman. She sold us her old car. That is the woman who sold us her old car.
- 2 This is the shop. I bought my clock here.
- 3 My dad has a friend. He collects old radios.
- 4 Is this the machine? It is used to play old records.
- 5 That is the film. I told you about it.
- 6 Where is the boy? I borrowed his book.

# Language builder

5 Choose the correct words to complete the text.



rock band when he was younger. In those days, they <sup>3</sup> ... to have any electronic equipment like they do nowadays. Anyway, he <sup>4</sup> ... the piano for years, and I <sup>5</sup> ... about learning to play until last week when I saw a TV program about teenage musicians who have recorded themselves and put their video clips on YouTube. Some of them <sup>6</sup> ... really famous! So I've been trying to teach myself. My dad says I <sup>7</sup> ... some progress, but my mum says the house <sup>8</sup> ... be a lot quieter! What's going on with you? Tell me your news.

Cheers!

Lisa

1	а	've been	b	'd been	С	've had
•	-	having		having		
2	a	use to	b	used to	C	used
3	а	didn't use	b	hadn't used	C	didn't used
4	а	hadn't been	b	hadn't touch	C	hasn't
		touching				touched
5	a	hadn't thought	b	haven't thought	C	don't think
6	а	have become	b	is becoming	C	are become
7	а	's been	b	've made	C	was making
		making				
8	а	use to	b	would	C	used to

# Speaking

#### 6 Match the sentences.

- 1 Do you think this T-shirt suits me?
- 2 How much memory does it have?
- 3 Are those jeans your size?
- 4 How long does the battery last?
- **5** Where are the changing rooms?
- a About nine hours of talk time
- **b** No, they don't fit very well.
- **c** Over there, on the left.
- d Yes, you look great!
- e It's got 32GB of memory.

# **Evaluation test**

# Language focus

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use *used to* and *would*.
  - 1 My grandmother <u>would always make</u> (always/ make) me a snack when I got home from school.
  - 2 My father imagined he .... (become) a rock star after finishing the conservatoire.
  - 3 I....(not/like) playing outside very much when I was a child.
  - 4 ....(your parents/be) hippies when they were young?
  - 5 When my parents were young, they .... (go) to a lot of concerts.
  - 6 My mother .... (not/collect) me from school very often because she was working.

# \_\_\_\_/ 5

#### **2** Choose the correct answer.

- 1 My brother used to/ would be very naughty when he was small.
- 2 Did you use to / Would you have long hair when you were young?
- 3 My grandparents used / would go dancing a lot as teenagers.
- 4 Jack didn't use to / didn't used to ride his bicycle very often as a child.
- 5 How often Ben used to / would Ben play football when he was 10?
- 6 He had hoped he will / would move to New York by the end of the year but that never happened.



## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the past perfect simple or continuous.

- 1 My friend <u>had left</u> (leave) by the time I got to the swimming pool.
- 2 I watched a great programme on TV last night. I .... (not see) it before.
- 3 Sandra's mother was angry because she found out that her daughter .... (skip) lessons in the last weeks.
- 4 .... (Mum/make) dinner when you arrived home last night?
- 5 Jack wanted to buy tickets for the concert, but they .... (sell out).
- 6 There was no one in the room when I entered, but the radio was on. Someone (listen) ... to it before.



#### 4 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Did you go / Had you been to Sarah's house before our visit there last Saturday?
- 2 Dad still didn't arrive / hadn't arrived home by the time I went out last night.

- 3 I got / had got to school guite late yesterday.
- 4 We didn't see / hadn't seen Jenny at the party last week.
- **5** Ben and Harry finally got tickets for the film that they waited / had waited so long to see.
- 6 I was waiting / had been waiting for three hours at the station before the train arrived.

\_\_\_\_/ 5

# Vocabulary

#### **5** Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Karen was disappointed by/ from her result in the swimming competition.
- 2 My mum's very keen **on / about** taking photos in her spare time.
- 3 I'm very excited with / about going to New York next month!
- 4 You should be proud for / of the painting you did – it's brilliant!
- 5 My class are all interested by / in History because our teacher's so good.
- 6 John says he's afraid for / of going out in the dark.

\_\_\_\_/5

6 Write five sentences describing the clothes you like to wear.

I like to pair my white shirt with a denim skirt.

\_\_\_\_/ 5

# Writing

- Write an article (100–120 words) about an older member of your family, their life now and what they used to do when they were young. Include information about:
  - who the person is;
  - how they are related to you;
  - what they do now (e.g. where they live and work);
  - what they did when they were young

(e.g. studies, travelling, work, where they lived) and what their aspirations were.



Granted points 5/5

\_\_\_\_/ 50



# 5-6

# Language focus

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the passive voice (present simple, past simple or will).
  - 1 Plastic *is used* (use) in many different ways in the modern world.
  - 2 The first working aeroplane .... (fly) by the Wright brothers in 1903.
  - 3 All the information .... (send) out to students next week.
  - 4 Today most of the world's tea .... (produce) in China and India.
  - 5 Eric and Andy were upset because they .... (not invite) to the party.
  - 6 The Harry Potter books .... (write) by J.K. Rowling.



#### **2** Choose the correct answer.

- 1 More glass recycled / was recycled last year than the year before.
- 2 They drink / is drunk more tea in Turkiye than anywhere else.
- 3 Will the car repair / be repaired by tomorrow?
- 4 Mobile phones weren't used / didn't use in the 1970s.
- 5 Most computer shops will sell / will be sold the new LED bulbs.
- 6 Olympic gold medals don't make / aren't made from real gold.



#### 3 Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.

- 1 I've seen the film .... you were watching.
  - (a) that b who c where
- 2 My mother has a friend ... makes wonderful cakes.
  - a which b whose c that
- 3 Do you know ... gloves these are?
  - a whose **b** which **c** who
- 4 I prefer films .... are funny not scary.
  - a that b where c who
- **5** Is this the place .... you bought your phone?
  - a which b that c where
- 6 There's a boy in my class .... father is an inventor.
  - a that b whose c who



#### 4 Use these words to write sentences.

- 1 That / be / the woman / be / on TV / last night (who)

  That's the woman who was on TV last night.
- 2 Tom / enjoy / films / not have / lots of / action (that)

- 3 In 2023 / we / go / a forest / we / see / tigers (where)
- 4 Gina / be / the girl / father / be / a pilot (whose)
- 5 I / want / to go / the shop / just open (which)
- 6 My parents / have / a friend / make / guitars (who)



# Vocabulary

5 Write five everyday objects. Then use each word in a sentence.

Phone charger. I left my phone charger in the hotel room.



#### 6 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I prefer to talk to my friends so I don't text/chat very often.
- 2 How do you lose / keep in touch with friends who live in other countries?
- 3 I've got so much to tell you about my holiday. I'll email / chat you so you can read all about it.
- 4 My sister used Facebook to catch up / track down an old friend who left her school 10 years ago.
- 5 People who use Zoom / chat on Snapchat prefer writing very short messages.
- 6 How often do you **chat / text** with your friends online?



# Writing

- Write a short review (100–120 words) of a gadget you own. Use the questions to help you.
  - What is the gadget?
  - What does it look like?
  - What can you do with it?
  - What do you like about it?

\_\_\_\_/ 15

Granted points 5/5

/ 50

**Total:** 

/ 100

#### **Self-evaluation**

- The most important thing I learned in Units 5–6 is .....
- I liked ... the most.
- It was quite difficult for me to .....

# DISCOVERY

## In this unit ...



Mission, possible? p87



A lost civilisation p90



Describing mistakes **p92** 



CLIL Lions in danger p154

#### **Vocabulary**

- Story elements
- Prepositions and adverbs of movement
- Linking phrases
- Words in context

#### Language focus

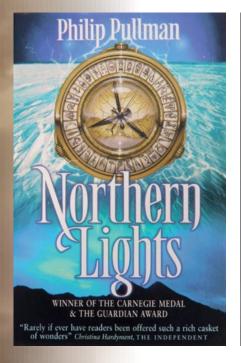
- Third conditional
- must have, can't have, might/may/could have; should/shouldn't for present/future expectation

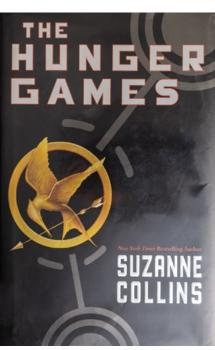


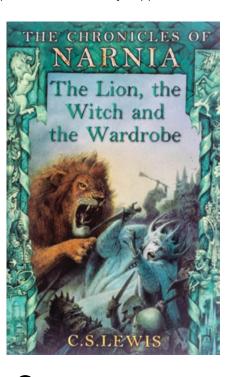
# **Vocabulary Story elements**

action main character(s) suspense villain mystery plot setting hero

- 1 the things that happen in a story *plot*
- 2 the most important person or people in a story
- 3 a person who is brave and good
- 4 a feeling of excitement when you are waiting for something to happen
- 5 a bad person
- 6 something strange or unknown that you can't explain
- exciting things that happen in a story,e.g. a battle, escaping from an enemy
- 8 the place where the story happens







Identify the story elements in the description below.

action - fighting against the White Witch's army

# The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe

Most of the story takes place in a fantasy world which four children enter by climbing through the back of a wardrobe. This enchanted land is ruled by the evil White Witch. She keeps the land in permanent winter. But the real king, Aslan, an enormous lion, is trying to win back his kingdom. The four children fight bravely alongside Aslan and his army to defeat the White Witch. But it isn't an easy task. The White Witch tries to trick Aslan and almost kills him, but he is strong, and by some incredible magic, he comes back to life.

3 Listen to two people talking about a film they've seen recently. Which four story elements do they talk about?

# Your turn

- 4 Think of a book you've read or a film you've seen recently. Make notes on some of the story elements from Exercise 1.
- Work with a partner. Discuss the book or film you've made notes on in Exercise 4. Tell your partner why you enjoyed it.
- **Vocabulary bank •** page 136

# Sound of Thunder BY RAY BRADBURY



A Sound of Thunder is a classic science-fiction story. Written in the 1950s, it's set in an imagined future world where people can travel in time. A tour company specialises in taking hunters back in time for an incredible hunting experience: finding and killing a Tyrannosaurus Rex. The main character, Eckels, is one of the hunters who signs up for the trip.

Before they set off, the guide explains the rules. They must not touch anything, and they must not **step off** the special path that **floats above** the ground because any damage to anything in the past could have a terrible effect on the future.

The guides plan to see a Tyrannosaurus Rex at a particular point in time, just minutes before a tree falls on it and kills it. When the hunters first see the incredible creature **approaching** them **through** the ancient forest, they are amazed. Eckels panics, **turns around** and steps off the path. The main guide is extremely angry and sends Eckels back to the time machine. The dinosaur hears the noise and **turns towards** the hunters. They are terrified, but they manage to shoot at, and kill, the monster. They **run back** to the time machine, but, when they get back to their own time, things are not quite as they were.

**FACT!** Ray Bradbury's stories and novels have sold more than eight million copies all around the world.

# Reading A plot summary

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the picture and answer the questions.
  - 1 What do you think happens in the story?
  - 2 Who are the main characters?
  - 3 Do you think it has a happy ending?
- Read the plot summary and check your answers. What do you think happens at the end of the story? Why?
- 3 Read the summary again. Put the events in the order they happened.
  - a The dinosaur appeared.
  - **b** The hunters killed the dinosaur.
  - **c** The dinosaur noticed the hunters.
  - **d** Eckels stepped off the path.
  - e Eckels saw the dinosaur.
  - f The hunters escaped in the time machine.
  - g Eckels killed the butterfly.

# Explore prepositions and adverbs of movement

- 4 Look at the highlighted words in the summary.
  Use the correct form of the phrases to complete the sentences below.
  - 1 He *turned towards* me and whispered, 'What's the answer?'
  - 2 She ... me slowly ... the crowded room.
  - 3 The balloon was ... so high ... my head that I couldn't catch it.
  - 4 I forgot my bag and had to .... to the house to get it.
  - 5 I ... the train onto the platform where my friend was waiting.
  - 6 When I shouted his name, he ... and saw me.
- Think about the route you took to school today. Use the prepositions and adverbs to describe your journey.

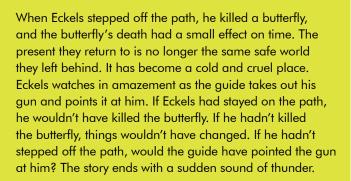
  I walked through the park and up the hill above the station.
- Vocabulary bank page 136

# Your turn

- 6 Work with a partner. Imagine that the story is being made into a new film. Think about the questions below.
  - 1 Who would you choose to play the parts of the main characters (Eckels and the guide)?
  - 2 What locations could be used for the setting in the past?
  - 3 What would the poster look like?

I think Robert Pattinson would be perfect as Eckels.

Oh no! I think ...



# Language focus 1

# Third conditional

1 Complete the examples from the text on page 86. Then choose the correct words to complete the rules.

Imaginary situation	Possible consequence		
(If + past perfect)	(would have + past participle)		
If Eckels <sup>1</sup> on the path,	he 2the butterfly.		
If he 3the butterfly,	things <sup>4</sup>		
If he 5 off the path,	6the guidethe gun at him?		

- We use the third conditional to talk about imaginary situations in the 'present / past.
- We often use the third conditional to talk about things we <sup>2</sup>regret doing / want to do.

**Watch out!** Pay attention to the sequence of tenses:

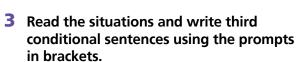
- conditional clause: *if* + past perfect;
- main clause: the auxiliary verb would have + the past participle form of the verb.

We use would have + past participle in the main clause, not in the conditional clause.

- Grammar reference page 127
- 2 Choose a verb phrase from the box to complete the sentences below.

hadn't been wouldn't have been had changed would have changed had talked would you have said

- 1 If he hadn't stepped off the path, the guide wouldn't have been angry with him.
- 2 If the guide .... so angry, he wouldn't have pointed the gun at him.
- 3 Nothing .... if Eckels had stayed at home.
- 4 If nothing ...., the story would have been very boring!
- 5 .... anything to the guide if you had been in Eckels' position?
- 6 If Eckels .... to the guide, do you think he wouldn't have been so angry?



- 1 Last night, I wanted to stay at home and watch TV, but a friend called and invited me to the cinema. (If / my friend / not call, I / stay / at home / watch TV) If my friend hadn't called, I'd have stayed at home and watched TV.
- When we got to the cinema, the film was sold out, so we decided to go for a burger. (If / the film / not be / sold out, we / not go for a burger)
- 3 I didn't have any money, so I decided to go to the bank.
  - (If / I / have / some money, I / not go / to the bank)
- 4 On the way to the bank, we saw a man selling lottery tickets.
  - (We / not see / the man / if / we / not go / to the bank)
- My friend bought a ticket, so I bought one too.(I / not buy / a ticket / if / my friend / not buy one too)
- 6 My ticket was a winning ticket and I won a million pounds! (If / my friend / not call / to ask me to go to the cinema, I / not win / a million pounds!)
- Say it right! page 117

# Your turn

4 Think about three things you did yesterday. Write a short sentence for each one.

Yesterday, I went to school.

Work with a partner. Talk about how your day could have been different.

If I hadn't gone to school yesterday, I'd have gone to the beach.

I wouldn't have done the Maths test, .

# Learn about an invention to stop motion sickness.

- Would you like to go into space? Why/Why not?
- If you could travel easily and cheaply in space, where would you like to go? Why?
- Would it be comfortable to travel in space? Why/Why not?





# Listening A podcast

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photo. What can you see? Do you think this was made by a giant, by humans or by nature? Why?
- 2 Listen to the podcast. Mark the sentences true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.
  - 1 The causeway is artificial.
  - 2 The podcast gives three different explanations for the causeway.
  - 3 The presenter prefers the second theory.
- 3 Listen again and choose the correct options.
  - 1 The Giant's Causeway is in Northern Ireland / Scotland.
  - 2 The tallest columns are over 12 / 20 metres high.
  - 3 Local legends say there was once an Irish giant called Finn McCool / Benandonner.
  - 4 This giant wanted to walk / swim 70 miles across the sea to Scotland.
  - 5 Finn wanted / didn't want to fight Benandonner.
  - 6 Finn had a baby son / dressed up like a baby boy.
  - 7 Benandonner thought that the baby was dangerous / Finn was enormous.
  - 8 Scientists say the columns were formed more than 16 / 60 million years ago.

# **Vocabulary** Linking phrases

4 O Complete the sentences from the podcast with the phrases in the box. Then listen and check.

rather than in fact as a result of of course then again according to in order to so that

- 1 This can't have formed naturally! But, <u>then again</u>, humans can't have built it either. It's just too big!
- 2 ....local legends, long, long ago, giants lived in the Celtic lands of Ireland and Scotland.
- 3 Finn didn't like water, so, they say that .... swim across, he ....
- 4 .... may have built an enormous causeway .... he could walk across the sea.
- 5 ...., 70 miles away, on the west coast of Scotland, similar steps lead out of the sea and back to land.
- 6 .... trick Benandonner, she dressed Finn up as a baby.
- **7** But, ...., there is another explanation.
- 8 Scientists say that the causeway exists ... a series of violent volcanic eruptions.
- **Vocabulary bank •** page 136

# Your turn

Make a list of all the legends you know. They could be from your country or anywhere in the world.

the kraken - a giant sea creature

6 Choose one of the legends from Exercise 5 and write a short text. Use linking phrases from Exercise 4.

According to legend, the kraken lived off the coast of Norway. It attacked ships in order to take them to the bottom of the sea.



# Language focus 2 must have, can't have, might/may/could have for talking about possibility and making deductions

1 Complete the examples from the listening on page 88.

could a giant have may have can't have might have must have

- 1 It's easy to believe that a giant <u>might have</u> built them.
- 2 Humans .... built it either. It's just too big!
- 3 .... built this causeway?
- 4 He .... built the enormous causeway so that he could walk across the sea.
- 5 The local people say it .... been a giant!

# 2 Look again at the examples in Exercise 1 and answer the questions.

- 1 What verb form follows the phrases in the box?
  - a infinitive
- b past participle
- 2 Are the examples talking about the past or the present?
- 3 Match the modals (i–iii) with the meanings (a–c).
  - i must have
  - ii can't have
  - iii might/may/ could have
- a I think this explanation is impossible.
- **b** I think this is the only explanation.
- c I think this explanation is possible, but it isn't the only one.



- 1 What was that noise?
  - i It might have been the branch of a tree, c
  - ii It can't have been the cat,
  - iii It must have been the neighbours' kids,
  - a it's Halloween and they're out trick-or-treating!
  - **b** because she's sitting here with me!
  - c it's windy and there's a tree outside the window.
- 2 Where's John? He said he'd be here at eight!
  - i He must have got stuck in traffic,
  - ii He may have gone to the supermarket,
  - iii He can't have got lost,
  - a I asked him to get some milk for the morning.
  - **b** the roads are really busy tonight.
  - c he's been to our house a million times!

# Your turn

4 Look at the photos. Write sentences with must have, can't have and might/may/could have.

He must have jumped out of a plane.









# should/shouldn't for present/ future expectation

- 5 Complete the examples from the listening on page 88. Then choose the correct word to complete the rule.
  - 1 This explanation .... accurate enough to convince us.
  - **2** The scientific explanation makes sense too so it .... ruled out.
  - We use *should/shouldn't* when we expect something to happen in the present or near future, but we are / aren't 100% sure of that.
- Grammar reference page 128
- 6 Complete the sentences with *should/shouldn't* and a suitable infinitive.
  - 1 If you leave now, you **should be** at the airport in time.
  - 2 He has prepared himself so well for the exams. He .... poor marks.
  - 3 Can you help me with my homework? It .... only .... half an hour.
  - 4 Leo's mum is Italian. He .... Italian.
  - 5 Kim is at the New Year's Eve party. She .... back before midnight.



Find out about the Chiribaya.



- Watch the video and check your answers to Exercise 1. What do the objects they found tell us about the Chiribaya? How were llamas important?
- 3 Before you watch the video again, put these sections in the correct order. Then watch the video again and check your answers.
  - a archaeologists take objects out of graves
  - **b** objects in an exhibition
  - c the importance of llamas
  - d what the archaeologists found
  - e what the valley looked like when the Chiribaya lived there
  - f where the discoveries were made

## 4 Watch the video again and complete the sentences.

- 1 About .... years ago, workers from a nearby town were digging in the sand here when they found bones. Human bones
- When they lived here, in the Ilo Valley, between 900 and .... AD, everything would have looked very different.
- 3 At that time, there may have been as many as .... people living here.
- 4 Pots like these might have been used for food, or to carry .....
- Archaeologists have found gold artefacts in some of the graves, suggesting that their owners were very .... and .... people.
- 6 Some of the hats that archaeologists have found have beautiful feathers. The feathers of .....

# Your turn

#### 5 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- 1 Have you ever visited an archaeological site or an exhibition of ancient artefacts? If yes, where was it? What do you remember about it?
- 2 If you could travel back in time to visit an ancient civilisation, which civilisation would you like to visit? Why?
- 6 Imagine you could visit one of the civilisations you talked about in Exercise 5. How would life have been different? Think about these things:
  - their homes;
  - their food;

- their clothes;
- the work they did.



# **Reading** A magazine article

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos. Who do you think lived in these houses? How long ago did they live there? Why did they build their houses in this way?
- 2 Read the magazine article and check your answers.
- 3 Read the article again. Find a factual mistake in each sentence below.
  - 1 The Mesa Verde National Park is in Mexico.
  - The Pueblo people lived there for nearly 700 years.
  - 3 The word 'pueblo' means 'build'.
  - 4 The Balcony House is made up of 10 rooms.
  - 5 The only door is at the end of a tunnel.
  - The Pueblo people used ladders and ropes because they enjoyed climbing.

# Explore words in context

- 4 Match the highlighted words in the article with the definitions.
  - 1 a complicated system of paths where you can easily get lost maze
  - 2 deep valleys with very steep rock sides
  - 3 places where people live homes
  - 4 people who move to live in a new country or continent
  - 5 the lines that separate two countries or states

## Your turn

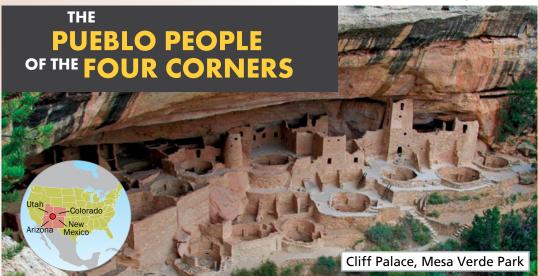
5 Imagine you lived in one of the cliff dwellings 1,000 years ago. What would your everyday life have been like?

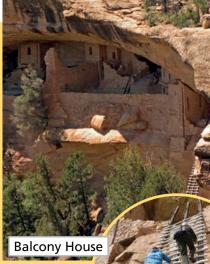
There wouldn't have been any electricity.

6 Work with a partner. Compare your ideas in Exercise 5. Would there have been any advantages to life as one

of the Pueblo people?

I think it might have been fun to climb in and out of the houses every day!





Mesa Verde National Park covers more than 80 square miles of the Four Corners region of the United States, where the **borders** of Utah, Colorado, Arizona and New Mexico meet. It was once the home of the Pueblo people, a Native American civilisation famous for its amazing cliff **dwellings**. The best examples of these incredible homes can be seen in the walls of the park's spectacular **canyons**.

The Four Corners is a landscape of extremes — hot and dry in summer, covered in snow in winter. It isn't an easy place to live, but the Pueblo people made their home here and farmed the land for over 700 years, from 600 to 1300 AD. They built complicated 'villages' (their name comes from the Spanish word for village, pueblo) where hundreds of people shared the protection of their strong stone walls. Early European settlers in North America were amazed by their building ability.

The Cliff Palace is the largest Pueblo cliff dwelling in the park. It's best seen from above, where the building will leave you wondering how these people could have built such complex houses. The most interesting of all the houses is the Balcony House. It is made up of 40 rooms, connected by long, narrow tunnels and built around a series of shared spaces and can only be visited with a guide. You have to be ready to climb – the only door into the house is at the top of a ten-metre high wooden ladder! When the Pueblo people lived here, they would have entered their homes by climbing ladders and ropes up the steep cliff wall. Once inside, they would have pulled the ladder into the house in order to protect themselves from enemies.

Exploring the **maze** of tunnels and rooms, you really start to understand what life must have been like for the Pueblo people so long ago. As you stand at the edge of the cliff, looking down into the canyon below and listening to the silence of nature, it's easy to imagine that you have travelled back in time.

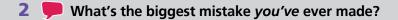
**FACT!** The Pueblo people's houses in Chaco Canyon were the tallest buildings in the USA until the 19<sup>th</sup> century.



#### Real talk: What's the biggest mistake you've ever made?

- 1 Watch the teenagers in the video. Order the mistakes they talk about.
  - a not getting a place
- c not sleeping 1
- e losing football matches

- **b** not going on a holiday
- d lots that I've learned from
- f not saying sorry



- 4 Complete the conversation with the phrases in the *Useful language* box.

## **Useful language**

Did your mum know? Did she say anything? That was lucky! Oh no! So then what happened? Really – why was that?

Nicola: That's a nice watch. Is it new?

**Dana:** No, it used to be my mum's. In fact, it nearly got me into trouble once.

Nicola: Really – 1 why was that ?

Dana: Well, when I was about six, I borrowed it from her room. Then I went in the garden to play, with the watch in my pocket.

Nicola: Did your <sup>2</sup>...?

Dana: No. Anyway, I was playing in the garden when I lost it. I looked everywhere, but I couldn't find it.

Nicola: Oh no! So 3...?

**Dana:** Nothing! I just hoped Mum wouldn't notice.

Nicola: Did she 4...?

**Dana:** No, but a few weeks later the dog was digging up some flowers and he found the watch!

Nicola: 5....! Was the watch okay?

**Dana:** Yes. I just cleaned it and put it back. She still doesn't know what happened.

Nicola: Wow! If the dog hadn't been naughty, you wouldn't have found it!



- 6 Work with a partner. Practise the conversation in Exercise 4.
- **7** Work with a partner. Take turns to say the sentences below and respond with a phrase from Exercise 4.
  - 1 Last year, I took my sister's MP3 player without asking.
  - 2 I fell out of the boat into the river.
  - 3 My dad got really angry with me.
  - 4 Anyway, I found it under the sofa a week later.
  - 5 I looked everywhere, but I didn't find them.
  - 6 Then I realised that it wasn't in my bag.
- Work with a partner. Plan your own conversation. Use the ideas below and Exercise 4 to help you.

#### Situation 1

You borrowed someone's MP3 player. It fell out of your bag and you lost it. You are saving money to buy them another one.

#### Situation 2

You went on a school trip. You were playing around and dropped your phone in a pond. It doesn't work now and your parents are angry.



# Writing Telling a story

## 1 Read Theo's email. What happened to Nick?





New mail +1

Hi Joel.

How are things? You'll never guess what happened to me and my brothers yesterday! We went for a bike ride in the country and we were chatting and laughing when, suddenly, a dog ran across the road right in front of us. Obviously, we tried to stop, and Robbie and I crashed into each other. Fortunately, we were okay, but Nick wasn't so lucky. He stopped so quickly that he fell off his bike and hit a wall at the side of the road. He hurt his arm and his back. If he'd seen the dog just a few seconds earlier, he'd have had time to stop safely.

Luckily, we had our mobiles, so we called our parents. We had to wait a long time, and Nick looked awful. He must have been in a lot of pain. Eventually, my parents arrived and took Nick to hospital. Amazingly, he only had a broken wrist. It was a shock, but it could have been much worse!

What's your news?

Theo



- Read the email again and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where were they? In the country.
  - 2 Who was there?
  - 3 What happened to them?
- 4 What did they do?
- What happened in the

# **Useful language**

#### **Adverbs**

We use adverbs in stories to link ideas together and to make a story more dramatic and interesting.

- ... when, suddenly, a dog ran across the road.
- We called my parents immediately.
- Eventually, they arrived.
- 3 Look at the *Useful language* box. Find four other adverbs like this in the email.
- 4 Match the beginnings and the ends of the sentences and join them with an adverb from the box.

fortunately eventually obviously luckily

- 1 They walked for a long time, but
- 2 We saw the wild cats, but
- 3 James crashed his guad bike into a tree, but
- 4 She was crying and
- 5 We'd never bought a lottery ticket before, but
- 1 c They walked for a long time, but eventually they arrived

at the campsite.

- a upset.
- **b** he didn't hurt himself.
- **c** they arrived at the campsite.
- d we won £1,000!
- e they didn't see us.

# Get writing - Portfolio

#### PLAN

5 Plan a story about an event in your life (or invent one). Make notes on the questions in Exercise 2.

#### WRITE

6 Write your story. Use your notes from Exercise 5 and the model text to help you.

#### CHECK

- 7 Can you say YES to these questions?
  - Have you explained what happened clearly using the questions in Exercise 2?
  - Have you used adverbs to make the story more interesting?



In this unit ...



On the run p97



Future directions p100



The biggest lie you've been told p102



CLIL True or false? p155

#### Vocabulary

- Crimes
- Words in context
- Reporting verbs
- Verb expressions

#### Language focus

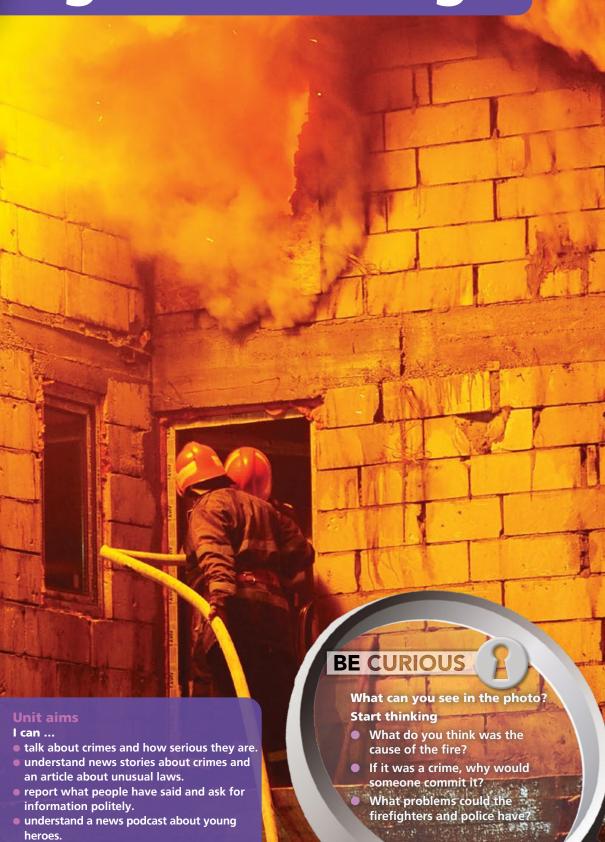
Reported statements

 ask questions to clarify and use appropriate phrases to confirm or deny information.

write an online article.

- Reported questions
- Indirect questions

# Right or wrong?





- 5 The police arrested her for arson
- a because he only stole one thing and it was his first offence.
- b they stole two computers and no one heard or saw a thing!
- but they haven't found any pirated films or music on his computer yet.
- d after they saw her start the fire on a security camera.
- e after they painted graffiti at the bus station and broke windows in the shopping centre.

1

- Look again at the crimes. Which do you think are a) very serious,b) quite serious and c) less serious?Make notes.
- 6 Discuss the questions in groups.
  - Do you agree or disagree about the crimes? Compare your notes.
  - 2 Which of the crimes on the list are common where you live? Do you live in a safe or a dangerous environment?

Vandalism is very common here, there is a lot of graffiti ...

**Solution Output Output**



A thief in Toronto announced his plan to rob a bank on Facebook. He then changed his name on the social media site to his **idol** – the bank robber Robert Metcalf. Then, to make sure all his friends knew about the robbery, he posted photos of himself holding some hundred-dollar bills. Of course, the police didn't take long to catch him. When asked about his need to **advertise** the crime, he told the truth and said to reporters that he couldn't believe his bad luck. He said that he was surprised that the police had looked at his Facebook page!

In Germany, a man was found guilty of **forgery** when he walked into a shop and bought some cigarettes. He paid for the cigarettes with a €30 note, although this note doesn't exist. The shopkeeper didn't notice at first – he told journalists that the **fake** was very poor quality. 'I was distracted. I gave €20 in change to the man. Later I realised my mistake!' The police eventually arrested the criminal. He said that somebody had given him the illegal note as a joke, but police found hundreds of fake notes at his home and arrested him for **fraud**. The local police inspector said that she had never seen such a stupid crime.

# **Reading News stories**

- 1 Look at the photos (a–c) and match them with the captions (1–3).
  - 1 An enormous bag of cash
  - 2 Euros which you've never seen before!
  - 3 Be careful if you find cash in the street!
- Read the news stories and match them with the photos. What is surprising about all three stories?
- 3 Read the stories again and choose the correct options.
  - 1 The bank robber made a mistake because he told **reporters** / **his friends**) about the crime.
  - 2 He told people about the crime before / before and after it happened.
  - 3 It was silly to use a €30 note because they aren't real / often used.
  - 4 The shopkeeper discovered the fraud immediately / after the event.
  - 5 The Scottish police officer was honest / dishonest.
  - 6 Mr Tarrant had forgotten about / returned for the money.

## Explore words in context

- Look at the highlighted words in the stories and match them with the definitions.
  - be in control of or responsible for something in charge
  - 2 record information on paper or on a computer
  - 3 something that looks real and is used to trick people
  - 4 two words for the crime of producing false documents
  - 5 announce something
  - 6 somebody that you admire a lot

# Your turn

- 5 Read the three stories again. What lesson can we learn from each one? Make notes.
  - In the first story, the lesson is that social media can cause you problems. People tell everybody everything ...
- 6 Work with a partner. Discuss your ideas from Exercise 5.

I think the lesson in the third story is that you can't trust a police officer.

I don't agree, I think it's more about honesty, you ...

In Edinburgh, Scotland, Ian Tarrant was walking down the street one day and suddenly found £75 on the pavement. He took it to his local police station. The police officer said that he would **register** it. A few days later, Mr Tarrant went back to the police station to ask about the money. He thought that if nobody had collected the money, he could keep it. But the police officer **in charge** said he had forgotten all about it. More importantly, the money had gone missing. In the end, the police had to return the money to Mr Tarrant. If he hadn't gone back to the police station, the police officer would have kept the £75!

**FACT!** CCTV cameras often help prevent crime. There are between 4–6 million CCTV cameras in the UK.

# Language focus 1

# Reported statements

- 1 Look at the sentences below. Can you find them as reported speech in the text?
  - 1 'I can't believe my bad luck.'
    - ... he ... said ... that he couldn't believe his bad luck.
  - 2 'I'm surprised that the police looked at my Facebook page!'
  - 3 'The fake is very poor quality.'
  - 4 'Somebody gave me the illegal note as a joke.'
  - 5 'I've never seen such a stupid crime.'
  - 6 'I'll register it.'
- 2 Look at the sentences in Exercise 1 and the examples of reported speech in the text. Complete the rules.

When we report a conversation, ....

- 1 the present simple changes to the future / past simple.
- 2 the past simple changes to the **present perfect / past perfect**.
- 3 the present perfect changes to the past perfect / past simple.
- 4 will changes to would and can changes to can't / could.
- Grammar reference page 129
- Read a police officer's response to the news stories in the text. Choose the correct form of the verbs in the reported version below.

'Most people are honest. If they find money in the street, they'll give it to us. In fact, last year there were fewer crimes in the UK. If there are dishonest people in the police force, they will lose their jobs. But the general public can continue to help the police to fight crime.'

The police officer told reporters that most people <sup>1</sup>(were) / had been honest. He said that if they <sup>2</sup>have found / found money in the street, they <sup>3</sup>would / will give it to the police. He told us that in fact last year there <sup>4</sup>have been / had been fewer crimes in the UK. The police also said that if there <sup>5</sup>are / were dishonest people in the police force, they <sup>6</sup>would / will lose their jobs. He finished by saying that the general public <sup>7</sup>could / would continue to help the police fight crime.

#### Get it right!

Tell must be followed by a direct object but say isn't.

'I'm sorry.' → She *told me* she was sorry. 'I'm sorry.' → She *said* she was sorry.

# 4 Complete the reported statements made by criminals.

- 1 'I'm guilty of committing the crime.' He told us .....
- 2 'I stole the money.'
  She said .....
- 3 'I've never been in trouble before.'
  He told them .....
- 4 'I will never do it again.'
  He said .....
- I can't understand why I did such a terrible thing.'She said ......
- 6 'I didn't steal from the old lady.'
  She told the police .....

## Your turn

5 Write true and false reported statements. Use the sentence prompts below to help you. Add three more sentences using your own ideas.

I said that I would do all my English homework this week.

My best friend told me that ....

My teacher told us that ....

Yesterday, my mum/dad said that

6 Work with a partner. Can they guess which of your sentences in Exercise 5 are true and which are false?

The first one's false – you'd never say that!

You're right!

#### Learn about Jamey Harris from Tennessee.

- What crimes do you think he committed?
- Do you think the police caught him?
- If so, what was his punishment?





On the run



# **Vocabulary Reporting verbs**

- 1 Match the verbs (1–8) with the definitions (a–h). Then listen and repeat the reporting verbs.
  - nromise

1 admit

- a to say that you are not happy with something
- 2 promise
- **b** to make a choice about what you want to do
- 3 suggest
- c to have the same opinion as other people
- 4 explain
- d to say in a strong way that something is true or should happen
- 5 complain
- to say something is true when you don't want to
- 6 insist
- f to say something more about something
- **7** decide
- g to say that you will definitely do something
- 8 agree
- h to offer a plan or an idea
- 2 Choose the correct verb to complete the sentences below.
  - 1 My mum complained / promised that she would buy me a new bike.
  - 2 He admitted / complained that it was his fault.
  - 3 He insisted / suggested that he was innocent.
  - **4** She **suggested / explained** that we went out for dinner.
  - 5 They decided / admitted that they would stay at home.
  - 6 We complained / agreed that this was the best decision.
  - 7 They promised / complained that the fine was too high.
  - 8 She decided / explained that the robbery had been carefully planned.
- 3 Report things that you have said to other people. Can you use all eight verbs?

I complained that I had too much homework.

**○ Vocabulary bank •** page 137



# Listening A news report

- 4 Work with a partner. Look at the police sketches for two crimes. What do you think happened in each?
- 5 Listen to a news podcast. What do the two stories have in common?
- 6 Work with a partner. Listen again and look at the words. Which words belong to which story? Try to reconstruct the stories.

scared millionaire evidence bravery robber kidnapper fine reward

- 7 Omplete the sentences with the past simple form of reporting verbs from Exercise
  1. Which story do they come from? Then listen again and check.
  - 1 Ralph <u>admitted</u> that he'd been a little scared.
  - 2 He .... that the man in the library was the robber.
  - 3 The police .... that James would receive a reward.
  - 4 The businesswoman .... that she and James met to thank him in person.
  - 5 The police .... that it was a very detailed description.

# Your turn

Work with a partner. Which of the teenagers was braver? What would you have done in these situations?

I think the first because the boy was very brave, he might have died!

I agree. I don't know what I would have done in that situation ...

# Language focus 2

# Reported questions

# 1 Complete the examples from the listening on page 98.

Direct questions	Reported questions		
Were you scared?	I also 1 him if he'd been scared.		
How did you catch the robber?	I asked him how he <sup>2</sup> the robber.		
Why is James's evidence so important?	I asked the police why James's evidence <sup>3</sup> so important.		

# 2 Look at the direct and reported questions in Exercise 1 again and complete the rules.

- 1 In reported Yes/No questions, we use if / when.
- 2 The word order is the same / different in direct and reported questions.
- 3 The tense changes / doesn't change in reported questions.
- 4 Reported questions have / don't have question marks.
- Grammar reference page 129

# 2 Look at the police officer's questions. Put the words in order to complete the reported questions.

- 1 'What time did you leave home?' (home / had / what / she / time / left)
  - He asked her what time she had left home
- 2 'Were you alone?' (been / if / she / alone / had) He asked her .....
- 3 'Do you have a criminal record?' (record / if / had / she / criminal / a)
  He asked her .....
- 4 'Did anybody see you?' (her / seen / had / anybody / if)He asked her .....
- 5 'Why didn't you call the police immediately?' (hadn't / she / called / immediately / why / the police)
  He asked her .....

## **Indirect questions**

# 4 Complete the examples from the listening on page 98.

Direct questions	Indirect questions		
What did you discover there?	1 you tell us what you discovered there?		
Give us more details about the crime, James.	James, I was <sup>2</sup> you could give us more details about the crime.		

# 5 Look at the direct and indirect questions in Exercise 4 again and complete the rules.

In indirect questions, ...

- 1 we use / don't use the auxiliary verbs do or did.
- 2 we use / don't use if in Yes/No questions.
- 3 we use the word order of a statement / question.

We use indirect questions in order to ...

- a check we've understood.
- **b** be polite.
- **Grammar reference •** page 129

#### Write indirect questions for the witness of a robbery. Add two more questions using your own ideas.

- 1 What's your name?

  Could you tell me what your name is?
- 2 How old are you?
- 3 What happened?
- 4 When did the robbery take place?
- 5 Did you do anything to try to stop the robbers?
- 6 When did the police arrive?
- 7 Were you frightened?
- 8 Did anybody else see the incident?
- Say it right! page 117

# Your turn

- 7 Imagine a crime has taken place in your area and that you saw it. Make notes.
- 8 Work with a partner. Student A is a police officer and Student B is a witness. Use the questions in Exercise 6 to ask and answer about what you saw. Then swap roles.





# Discover culture

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photo and answer the questions.
  - 1 Are there many women police officers in your country? Why/Why not?
  - 2 Why do you think more men do this kind of work?

Find out about a Chinese police officer.







- What kinds of problems do you think a female police officer in China might face? Watch the video and check your ideas.
- 3 Test your memory. Which activities did you see Jolene, the police officer, doing in the video?
  - a shopping in a supermarket
  - **b** practising martial arts
  - c interviewing a suspect
  - d washing clothes by hand
  - e walking in the hills
  - f putting a suspect into a car
  - g holding down a fellow police officer
  - h running after a suspect

5 Choose the correct words. Then watch the video from 00.48 to 01.05 and check your answers.

'I may be a woman on the outside, I may appear to be very 'careful / gentle, but I'm a lot 'tougher / harder than I look. I'm just as capable as my male 'colleagues / companions, and I've got the 'strength / guts to face down hardened 'suspects / criminals.'

- 6 Change the underlined words so the sentences are true about Jolene's life.
  - 1 All of the other officers Jolene works with are <u>women</u>.
  - 2 Her department made thousands of arrests last year.
  - 3 Jolene's mum is very <u>angry with</u> her.
  - 4 She never worries about the future.

## Your turn

- 7 Ask and answer the questions with your partner.
  - 1 Why do you think the video is called 'Future directions'?
  - 2 Would you like to try Jolene's job? Why/Why not?
  - 3 Which jobs do you think women do better than men? Why?

I think it's called 'Future directions' because ...

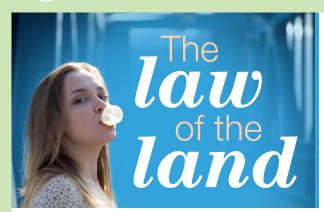
I definitely wouldn't want to try Jolene's job because ...





# Reading An article

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos. Can you do these things freely in Romania? Where do you think these actions could be illegal? Why?
- Read the travel article and check your answers.





If you're going on holiday, you need to **take care** that you don't break local laws. An action which is okay in one country could be illegal in another – like **running out of** petrol in Germany or not wearing underwear in Thailand!

For example, Singapore has a ban on chewing gum. The reason is that it ruins the city's clean pavements. Some people support the ban but others don't **see the point**. I asked local resident Daniel Xerri how the law started. He explained that one of the main problems was people putting gum on subway train doors so they didn't open, but

he admitted this probably wouldn't be a problem these days. However, a tourist from Hong Kong thought the ban was a very good thing because it kept the environment clean.

There are many other surprising laws. A popular tourist destination is, of course, Venice. Did you know you can't feed the pigeons in St Mark's Square because of the damage done to the ancient monuments? A recent law stated that you can be fined over €500 for this or for selling birdseed. It is typical of a law that has **come into existence** because of the world's increasingly dirty cities. London also **went ahead** with a similar law to protect Trafalgar Square from pigeons.

A law which **dates back to** the 2000s was introduced banning women from wearing high heels to ancient Greek sites, such as the Odeon of Herodes Atticus on the Acropolis in Athens. This monument has survived for 2,000 years and is still used today for special events. It also holds an important arts festival each summer. People dress up to attend these events and women's high heels can do terrible damage to the ancient stones.

Whether you're travelling near or far, respect local laws and be prepared for the weirder ones!

- 3 Read the article again and match the information (1–6) with the places, Singapore, Venice or Athens.
  - 1 There is a difference of opinion about the law. *Singapore*
  - 2 This law exists in another famous place.
  - 3 The law fits with the city's clean image.
  - 4 The law is necessary because an ancient building is still being used today.
  - 5 You have to pay money if you break this law.
  - 6 This law was introduced not long ago.

# 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of verb expressions from Exercise 4.

**FACT!** In Sarpourenx, in southwest France,

because there is no space left in the cemetery.

it is illegal for residents to die in the town

- 1 Illegal downloading didn't .... until the digital age.
- 2 Did you know that .... petrol is a crime in some countries?
- 3 The ban ... a time when graffiti was very popular.
- 4 The judge didn't .... of the defendant's argument.
- 5 .... that you don't drop rubbish it's illegal here.
- **Output Output O**

# Explore verb expressions

- 4 Match the highlighted words in the article with the definitions.
  - 1 be present now come into existence
  - 2 understand your opinion
  - 3 have started from a certain time
  - 4 start to do something
  - **5** be careful
  - 6 be without

# Your turn

- 6 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - 1 What do you think of the laws in the text?
  - 2 Which do you think would be difficult/easy to introduce in Romania? Why?

101



#### Real talk: What's the biggest lie you've ever been told?

1 Watch the teenagers in the video. Match the person or people to the lie.

everyone big brother classmate (x2) ex-best friend granny

- a Tomorrow's a holiday. *classmate*
- **b** My granny is ill.
- **c** This is a delicious fruit.
- **d** The theme is the ocean.
- e Vegetables do amazing things.
- f My cousin is a famous actor.
- 2 What's the biggest lie you've ever been told?
- Listen to a journalist interviewing a footballer. Which thing that she asks about is true?
- 4 Complete the conversation with the phrases in the *Useful language* box.



## **Useful language**

#### Questions

Is that right?
Is it true that ...?
Would you like to comment on ...?

#### **Answers**

These rumours are completely false.
They're totally untrue.
You must be joking!
Yes, absolutely!

Journalist: Thanks for this interview, Luke. I've got

lots of questions. Now, you're only 19, you have a 5-year contract, and people say you earn over £75,000 a week.

Footballer: You 1 must be joking ! My salary is a

lot less because I'm still very young.

**Journalist:** OK, but <sup>2</sup>...you've bought a Ferrari?

Footballer: Yes, 3....! That is true! It was my

dream to buy a Ferrari.

Journalist: I've also heard you don't have a good

relationship with your manager. 4....?

**Footballer:** Look, these rumours <sup>5</sup>.... I respect the

boss, honest!

**Journalist:** OK! Would you <sup>6</sup>.... all the stories

about you moving to Spain?

**Footballer:** Yes. They're <sup>7</sup>..... I'm happy here and

enjoying my football. But one day I'd love to play in Spain or Italy. Why not?

- 6 Work with a partner. Practise the conversation in Exercise 4.
- Work with a partner. Take turns to ask and answer questions about the rumours below.
  - 1 You're leaving this school.
  - 2 Your parents have won the lottery.
  - **3** Your sister is a film actress.
  - 4 You get a lot of pocket money.
  - 5 Your brother drives a sports car.
- Work with a partner. Plan your own conversation. Use the ideas below and Exercise 4 to help you.

#### Actor

- You earned \$1m for your last film.
- You had a good relationship with the actor in the film. You always wanted to work with him/her.
- You really liked the director and you would work with him/her again.
- You live in New York and you are happy.
   You'd like to live in England in the future.

#### **Journalist**

- You have heard stories that he/she earned \$6m for his/her last film.
- You watched the film and you think that he/ she had a good relationship with his/her co-star.
- You have heard rumours that he/she didn't like the director of the film.
- You read that he/she has bought a new house in Los Angeles with 10 bedrooms and 12 bathrooms.



# Writing An online article

1 Read the online article. Is the situation with illegal downloading getting better or worse?



Read the article again and make notes about why illegal downloading is ...

1 so worrying.

**2** a bad thing.

3 falling.

## Useful language

#### **Describing amounts**

We can use different phrases to show more or less of a number.

- well under a billion dollars
- just over a million
- We also use different words to guess numbers.
- an estimated 70 billion songs
- approximately 70,000 jobs
- about one third
- 3 Look at the Useful language box. Find five other similar words and phrases in the article.
- Complete the sentences with the phrases in the box.

just over approximately well over just under more than estimated

- 1 One study found that well over 80 per cent of digital content consumed in Spain was illegal. (83%)
- 2 In a survey in Norway .... three quarters of internet users said they would pay to see films online legally. (76%)
- 3 There are an .... 146 million visits every day to just 43 of the world's digital piracy sites, experts think. (146?)
- 4 The most popular pirated film in 2023 was Avatar: The Way of Water, with .... 8 million downloads! (8 million +)
- 5 Piracy of movies and TV shows in Japan has reduced by .... half because of legal streaming sites. (49–51%)
- In my class ... a guarter of students think illegal downloading is bad because it affects the film industry. (24%)



#### PLAN

- 5 Plan an online article about film piracy.
  - Ask your classmates about their opinions.
  - Organise your notes using the questions in Exercise 2. Use the facts and figures in Exercise 4 to help you.
  - Find additional information on the internet.

#### WRITE

6 Write your article. Use your notes from Exercise 5 and the model text to help you.

#### CHECK

- 7 Can you say YES to these questions?
  - Have you included statistics to show how big the problem is?
  - Have you used phrases to give approximate numbers and percentages?



# **Vocabulary**

 Match the underlined parts of the story (1–6) with the story elements in the box.
 There are two words you don't need to use.

<del>plot</del> action hero suspense main characters setting mystery villain

- 1 The story is about <u>an alien spaceship that comes</u> to Earth from Mars. *plot*
- 2 It lands near a small village in England.
- 3 A scientist lives there with his wife and daughter.
- 4 The scientist is very brave and tries to save his family, and the world.
- 5 No one knows why the aliens have come to Earth.
- 6 There is a big battle between the humans and the aliens.

# 2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 According to / As a result of legend, there was a princess who lived in a tower long ago.
- 2 In order to / Rather than save her, the prince had to climb to the top of the tower, but it was very high.
- 3 The princess tried to make a rope from her hair so that / in fact he could climb up.
- 4 Of course, / Then again, her hair never grew long enough to reach the ground.
- **5** Rather than / In order to wait any longer, the prince sent a large bird to fly to the princess and carry her away.
- 6 It can't have been easy to fly on a bird, but, then again, / in order to love can make anything possible.

# 3 Match the sentences (1–6) with the crimes (a–f).

- 1 Someone in the crowd stole his wallet, which was in his trousers.
- 2 He was walking home when a man attacked him and stole his phone.
- 3 Someone set fire to the building.
- 4 A group of men broke into the bank and stole millions.
- 5 They smashed windows and painted graffiti in the railway station.
- **6** They obtained music files from the internet without paying for them.

- a arson
- **b** pickpocketing
- c mugging
- d illegal downloading
- e robbery
- f vandalism



# 4 Match the sentences (1–8) with the reporting verbs in the box.

suggest complain decide admit explain insist <del>promise</del> agree

- 1 'I'll write every day.' promise
- 2 'This soup is too salty!'
- 3 'Yes, I broke the window.'
- 4 'My clock isn't working and that's why I missed the train.'
- 5 'That's my mind made up! I'm going to apply for the job.'
- 6 'Shall we go home now?'
- 7 'Yes, that's a very good idea.'
- 8 'You really have to come to dinner tonight!'

# Explore vocabulary

# The two boys slowly walked towards back the

castle. The path was steep and narrow. They heard a sudden sound and turned 'towards / around to look behind them, but everywhere was dark. The moon shone 'through / around the clouds in the midnight sky. A bat flew 'above / through their heads. 'Wouldn't it be better if we went 'back / off home?' said Rick. 'Don't be silly!' said Jack. They stepped 'off / above the path and went towards the secret entrance at the bottom of the castle wall ...

# 6 Complete the text with the verb expressions in the box.

take care came into existence see the point date back go ahead

Visitors to art museums around the world should remember that many galleries don't let visitors take photos. These rules ¹.date.back. to a time when people used flash photography, which could damage the art. The rules ².... to protect the art as well as to prevent images being sold illegally. But nowadays, with digital cameras and phones everywhere, museums are taking a more relaxed approach. 'I don't really ³.... any more – everyone has a camera, so you can't do much about it,' said one visitor. 'As long as people ⁴.... not to touch the paintings, I think it's OK,' said another visitor. 'I don't mind if people ⁵.... and take pictures of the art, but I can't stand it when they just take pictures of themselves in front of the art – it's so annoying!'



# Language focus

#### 1 Write third conditional sentences.

- 1 I didn't buy a lottery ticket. I didn't win a prize.

  If I'd bought a lottery ticket, I'd have won a prize.
- 2 You didn't study. You failed the test.
- 3 I didn't answer the phone. I wasn't at home.
- 4 He was late for school. He missed the bus.
- 5 Tim didn't go to the party. He had a cold.

#### 2 Make sentences about the pictures.



 Joe / must / forget / umbrella



3 Julie / may / be sick / yesterday



5 Sue / must / pass / driving test



7 They / should / know / where / the safe / be



2 Sally / could / win / lottery



4 Simon / can't / study / very hard



6 Tom / might / crash / bike



8 Sally / should not / be / late / today

1 Joe must have forgotten his umbrella.

#### 3 Complete the reported statements.

- 1 'I'll answer your questions.'
  He told them *he'd answer their questions*...
- 2 'There's been a robbery.' He told them .....
- 3 'The robbers took all the money.' He said .....
- 4 'I'll go and call the police.' He told them ...

# 4 Put the words in order to make reported or indirect questions.

- 1 'Where are you from?' She / him / he / from / was / asked / where
- 2 'Did you see anything?' asked / They / anything / seen / had / I / if / me
- 3 'What is your address?' us / you / what / is / address / your / Could / tell
- 4 'Was there any noise?' asked / if / He / been / any noise / there / had

# Language builder

5 Choose the correct words to complete the text.



#### New mail +1

Hi Julian,

I had some bad luck yesterday. My phone ¹ d stolen! I was just stepping off the bus when a man pushed past me. He ².... have taken it from my bag. The police said that several people ³... reported stolen phones recently. They asked me ⁴... describe the man, but I couldn't remember. I'm so annoyed! If I ⁵... my bag more carefully, it wouldn't have been so easy to steal!

Anyway – some good news! My favourite band  $^6$  on Saturday – do you want to come? Do you know how long  $^7$  since we last saw each other? Three months! This band is really good. I've seen them twice before.  $^8$  tickets is no problem because I know the girl  $^9$  in the ticket office. If you  $^{10}$  me tonight, I'll tell you more about it!

See you soon,

Teresa

1	a has	<b>b</b> had	c is	<b>d</b> was
2	a must	<b>b</b> had	c can't	<b>d</b> may to
3	a is	<b>b</b> had	c could	<b>d</b> are
4	a could I	<b>b</b> I could	<b>c</b> if could I	<b>d</b> if I could
5	a 'd closed	<b>b</b> 'd close	c closed	d 'll close
6	a plays	<b>b</b> will play	<b>c</b> is playing	<b>d</b> has
				played
7	a it's been	<b>b</b> has it been	c it was	<b>d</b> was it
8	a To get	<b>b</b> Getting	<b>c</b> We can get	<b>d</b> We'd get
9	a that she	<b>b</b> that works	<b>c</b> she works	d she's
	works			working
10	a call	<b>b</b> 'll call	c 's calling	<b>d</b> 're calling

# Speaking

# 6 Choose the correct words to complete the conversations.

- A: This isn't my bracelet actually. It's my mum's.
- B: Does she 1know / happen you've got it?
- C: Is it 2true / real that you're moving to Italy?
- D: Those rumours are completely <sup>3</sup>joking / false.
- E: I lost my smartphone but someone found it.
- F: That was 4fortune / lucky!
- G: I borrowed my sister's bike without telling her.
- **H:** Oh no! Did she say ⁵tell / anything?



# Language focus

#### 1 Match the sentence halves

- 1 If I'd known about the battery on this phone, e
- 2 You would have liked the film better
- 3 She would have found you more easily
- 4 I'd have gone shopping yesterday
- 5 If the film had started earlier
- 6 They wouldn't have seen Jules on TV
- a if you hadn't read the book.
- **b** we would have gone to see it.
- c if they hadn't watched the news.
- **d** if your phone had been on.
- e I would have bought a different one.
- f if I hadn't had to go to school.

\_\_\_\_/ 5

#### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the third conditional.

- 1 We wouldn't have missed (not miss) the film if we'd got to the cinema earlier.
- 2 What .... (you/do) if you had missed the train?
- 3 If Julie .... (not feel) sick, she would have gone to the match.
- 4 Would you have chosen this phone if it .... (be) more expensive?
- 5 If I hadn't studied so hard, I .... (not pass) the test.
- 6 Which shops would you have gone to if you .... (have) time?

#### 3 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Helen hasn't arrived yet. She mustn't /can't have got a lift from her mum.
- Where's my phone? I might / might not have left it on the bus.
- 3 The cinema **could / must** have been full. There were no tickets left.
- 4 Jack can't / might have finished his homework. He hasn't had enough time.
- 5 That was a strange noise. It may / can have been the kids next door.
- 6 Steve's clothes were wet. He must / can have forgotten his umbrella.



#### 4 Use the words to write sentences.

- 1 Maria didn't come to the party. She / must / be / busy She must have been busy.
- Everybody was smiling.The film / must / end / happily.
- 3 Jack didn't know any of the answers. He / can't / do / his homework.
- 4 Sue wasn't at the match. She / might / have to / look after / her brother.
- 5 The teacher didn't answer my question. She / might / not / hear / it.
- 6 They fixed my computer.
  It / should / work / well / now

\_\_\_\_/ 5

# Vocabulary

5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

hero mystery villain plot setting author

- 1 The <u>author</u> of the novel Northern Lights was Philip Pullman.
- 2 It's a murder .... about a policeman trying to find out who killed a millionaire.
- 3 The film's ... is on another planet in space.
- 4 The .... in the film is an evil character who tries to destroy the city.
- **5** I prefer films that have a simple .....
- 6 In the book, the .... saves the world from being destroyed.

\_\_\_\_/ 5

6 Write sentences using the following phrases: put up, throw away, knock down, cut down, keep on.

Why don't you put up your hood?

\_\_\_\_/ 5

# Writing

- Write a short story (100–120 words) about an interesting day in your life. Use the questions below to help you.
  - Where were you?
  - Who were you with?
  - What happened?
  - Why was it an interesting day?

/ 15

Granted points 5/5

\_\_/ 50

# **Evaluation test**

### UNITS 7-8

### Language focus

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs. Use reported speech.
  - 1 'The man escaped in a blue car,' said Bill.
    Bill said that the man <u>had escaped</u> in a blue car.
  - 2 'They'll ask you lots of questions,' Jane told me. Jane told me they ... me lots of questions.
  - 3 Mark said, 'There's been an accident.'
    Mark said there .... an accident.
  - 4 'I can help you,' Mrs Jackson said. Mrs Jackson said she ... me.
  - 5 Andy said, 'My granddad speaks three languages.'
    - Andy said his granddad .... three languages.
  - 6 'I've seen that film,' said Sadie. Sadie said that she that film.



### 2 Complete the sentences in direct speech.

- 1 Anna said she had enjoyed herself.

  ' *lenjoyed* myself.'
- 2 Tim's mum said he hadn't done his homework. '....your homework, Tim.'
- 3 The teacher said I always played football well. '....football well.'
- 4 Jackie said she could do it. '....it.'
- 5 Dave told me he would text me the next day. '....you tomorrow.'
- 6 Olga said she knew the answer.
  '....the answer.'



## 3 Use the words in brackets to write reported questions.

- 1 (him / I / had / if / seen)
  Pat asked if I had seen him.
- 2 (happening / was / why / this) Andy asked her .....
- 3 (I / be / would / there / if / Monday / next)
  Mr Graham asked .....
- 4 (made / John / new / if / he / friends / had) Verna asked .....
- 5 (they / when / meet / us / could) Anne and Mike asked .....
- 6 (the / had / she / party / been / at / who / with) Toby asked Sona .....



#### 4 Write five sentences using third conditional.

If they had left earlier, they would have arrived on time.



### Vocabulary

5 Write five crime words. Then use each word in a sentence.

Arson. A cinema was burned out in north London last night. Police suspect arson.



6 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two more words than you need.

take see go come <del>run</del> date get put

- 1 Some people can't believe that we'll ever <u>run</u> out of oil.
- 2 New types of insect are likely to .... into existence as the world's climate changes.
- 3 These songs sound modern, but in fact they .... back to the 1950s.
- 4 Some older people can't .... the point of playing video games.
- 5 The football club are hoping to .... ahead with their plans for a new stadium.
- 6 We need to .... more care of our planet and look after it for people in the future.

### Writing

- 7 Write an article (100–120 words) reporting on crime where you live. Use these questions:
  - What crimes are common where you live?
  - Have you ever seen somebody committing a crime?
  - How do you and your friends feel about crime?
  - What should the police do to prevent crime?

/ 15

Granted points 5/5

/ 50

**Total:** 

/ 100

### **Self-evaluation**

- The most important thing I learned in Units 7–8 is .....
- I liked .... the most.
- It was quite difficult for me to .....

### Language focus

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use will, going to or the present continuous tense.
  - 1 Hurry up! The bus .... (leave) in ten minutes, and you're not ready!
  - 2 I'm sure John .... (buy) the latest computer game when it comes out.
  - 3 I need to hurry I .... (get) the three o'clock train to the city centre.
  - 4 My brother's got his driving test tomorrow, but he .... (probably / not pass).
  - 5 I .... (watch) TV all evening when I get home!

5

- **2** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.
  - 1 If I .... (have) enough money, I'd spend it all on clothes.
  - 2 If.... (you / play) tennis, would you play with Simona Halep?
  - 3 If Ben .... (meet) someone famous, he'd definitely take a photo!
  - 4 I .... (not / know) what to do if I lost my phone.
  - 5 What .... (you / do) if you were me?

5

3 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use the present or past simple passive.

1 A local artist makes these bowls. These bowls .... .

2 They manufacture laptops in Taiwan. Laptops ....

**3** The storm damaged twenty houses. Twenty houses ......

**4** When did they build this house? When ....?

5 My brother found our cat at a bus stop. Our cat .....

5

4 Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.

1 We definitely \_\_\_\_ forget to get tickets for the concert.

a won't

**b** might

c should

2 I think .... probably stay at home this evening if you don't mind.

a I might

**b** I won't

c I'll

3 We've got ..... money for a ride on the roller coaster. Let's go!

a too much

**b** enough

c too many

4 She .... for Tim for two hours before he arrived by train at the station.

a waited

**b** had been waiting **c** was waiting

5 .... people are waiting in the queue for the bus?

a How much

**b** How little

How many

# Final evaluation test (A

### Vocabulary

#### 5 Match the definitions (1-5) with the words and phrases (a-f). There is one more word than you need.

- 1 behave in a way that is not honest in order to get what you want
- 2 use far more of something than you need to
- 3 get information about something because you want to know more about it
- 4 learn something new
- 5 send things like plastic and paper to be used again

- a throw away
- **b** waste
- **c** recycle
- **d** cheat
- e find out

pick up

5

### 6 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

wear switch make save do

- 1 I had to .... a difficult decision this morning which cake to eat!
- 2 My parents say we need to .... more energy in our house.
- 3 I really want to .... something fun at the weekend.
- 4 I forgot to .... off my lamp when I went to school yesterday.
- 5 I don't like having to .... a uniform when I go to school.

5

#### 7 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I don't know why, but I find clowns really terrified / terrifying.
- 2 My brother was making / doing a lot of noise last night and I couldn't sleep.
- 3 The idea of going up in a lift is quite worried / worrying for me.
- 4 I need to do / make my homework now, so I can't watch TV.
- 5 Look they've finally knocked down / cut down that old house.

5

#### **8** Label the pictures. The first letter is there to help you.







\_\_\_

**p**\_\_\_\_

**p\_\_\_\_** 





<u>w\_\_\_</u>\_

### **Useful language**

Complete the conversation between two friends. Choose from the answers (a–g). There are two more expressions than you need.

Amy: Helen! What happened to you this morning?

Helen: 1

Amy: Well, you were supposed to meet me and our friends in town!

Helen: 2 ....

Amy: Oh? Well, my phone isn't working well. So where were you?

Helen: 3

Amy: I thought you did that yesterday.

Helen: 4 .....

Amy: Well, if I were you, I'd tell him. Maybe we could do your

homework together?

Helen: 5

Amy: No problem – I'm glad to help. And don't worry!

- a I'm really sorry I tried to call you, but there was no reply.
- **b** That'd be great, Amy! Thanks!
- c I think it'll be OK.
- **d** Mum said I had to stay at home and finish my homework.
- e I'm not sure if that's a good idea.
- f Why? What do you mean?
- g I couldn't it's just too hard.My teacher's going to be cross.

10

### Listening

10 Listen to Maria and her brother Adam packing for their camping trip with friends. Tick () the right person.

	Who	Adam	Maria
1	wants to check the sun cream?		
2	is taking two torches?		
3	has got a penknife?		
4	thinks taking sleeping bags is a good idea?		
5	wears glasses to read?		

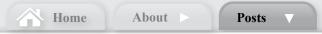


## Final evaluation test



### Reading

11 Read James's blog. Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.



This is the end of my second week of my trip to Australia and here I am, spending a few days at Ayers Rock, or Uluru as it is called by the Aboriginals, near Alice Springs. I took the train from Adelaide because I wanted to see as much of this huge country as possible. It was a really long journey and a bit boring to be honest as there isn't really that much to see – just desert and a few plants here and there! I didn't even see any animals as most of them only come out when it starts to get dark, so probably most of them were asleep. I guess it's too hot for them in the midday sun.

I'm camping here with a group of students. We've got a fantastic guide who met us here and knows so much about the history and geography of this place. It's absolutely boiling during the daytime but freezing at night so it really is extreme. No one can remember the last time there was heavy rain so you can imagine how careful everyone is with water.

Tomorrow we're hiking round Ayers Rock. It doesn't look that big on pictures but it's actually almost 10 km! But I'll manage, I'm sure. The colours are amazing ... reds and oranges and purples, so I'm really looking forward to taking some good photos.

James Brayne

- 1 James has been in Australia for .....
  - a two weeks
- **b** a week

- c a few days
- 2 James found the train journey to Ayers Rock .....
  - a very exciting
- **b** quite uninteresting
- c very enjoyable
- 3 James thinks he didn't see any animals because .....
- a it was dark
- **b** he slept a lot
- c it was boiling

- 4 The guide with James .....
  - a is also a student
- **b** is an expert on the area
- c came with the group by train

- 5 It's very unusual to get ..... there.
  - a hot weather
- **b** freezing temperatures
- c heavy rain

### Writing

12 The teacher has asked you to write a story. The story must begin with the following sentence: 'Jack looked at his friend's social media page and couldn't believe what he saw!'
Write your story, in about 100–120 words.

15

**Granted points** 

10 10

10

**Total** 

100

15

#### OBSERVATION CHECKLIST

Read the statements below and choose the most suitable for you. There are no correct or incorrect answers. Through your honest answers, your teacher will get to know you better and understand how to help you progress.

#### When I practised what I learned, I liked to:

- choose the correct answer from several options given. □
- complete the sentences with missing words.
- match sentence halves. □
- lacksquare complete words when the first letter has been given. lacksquare
- match guestions with suitable answers.
- listen to a recording and solve the comprehension activity. □
- read a text and solve the comprehension activity.
- write a text following the steps given.

### Language focus

#### 1 Choose the correct answer.

My teacher suggested <sup>1</sup> visiting / to visit museums as a way of learning about the world. I asked her if she <sup>2</sup> can / could recommend one, and she said the museum <sup>3</sup> which / who she liked best was the Science Museum. I decided to go there and I learnt a lot. I found out that the telephone is nearly 150 years old. It <sup>4</sup> was / has invented by a Scottish man <sup>5</sup> which / whose name was Alexander Bell.

5

#### 2 Match the sentence halves

- 1 I don't like chocolate that
- 2 The most chocolate in the world
- 3 I don't mind helping
- 4 Making cakes
- 5 If I'd had more time,

- a isn't as easy as it looks.
- **b** you make the cake.
- c has nuts in it.
- d I'd have eaten more.
- e is eaten in Switzerland.

5

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two more words than you need.

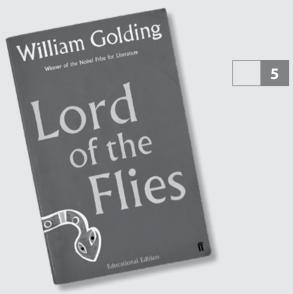
who should must can't where what would

- 1 She's the singer .... was on TV yesterday.
- 2 I visited a zoo ..... you could see a white tiger.
- 3 They said the film was great so we ..... like it too.
- 4 She didn't answer the door so she .... have gone out.
- 5 If you had told me the story before, it ..... have made the film less exciting.

5

## 4 Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it means the same as the first. Use no more than three words.

- 1 William Golding's novel of 1954 was called *Lord of the Flies*.
  - The ..... William Golding's novel of 1954 was Lord of the Flies.
- 2 I read this book recently, and it's about a boy with magic powers.
  - The book .... recently is about a boy with magic powers.
- 3 Shops sold fewer books last year than the year before.
  - Fewer books .... last year than the year before.
- 4 My dad is wondering if he should write a book about his childhood in India.
  - My dad is considering .... a book about his childhood in India.
- 5 I won't finish this book by Monday because it's so long. If this book ..... shorter, I would finish it by Monday.



## Final evaluation test



### Vocabulary

#### 5 Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.

1 The ..... on the left is for hot water.

a plug b tap c file

2 You need to put the ..... in the wall if you want power.

a candle b plug c button

3 The .... for the light is next to the door.

a switch b heater c tap

4 Don't play with ..... – you could start a fire.

**a** cards **b** taps **c** matches

**5** We'll need to light a .... because there's no electricity.

**a** fan **b** laptop **c** candle



5

#### **6** Choose the correct answer.

- 1 He dressed up in old clothes in order to / as a result look poorer than he was.
- 2 In the book, the villain / hero saves the world from being destroyed.
- 3 I didn't find the plot / mystery of the film very exciting. Did you?
- 4 This castle dates / gets back to the sixteenth century.
- 5 Marta suggested / agreed seeing a film this Friday. What do you think?

5

#### 7 Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.

Our class made a film together, and it was really good ¹..... our teacher. It was about a gang who do ²..... They're all children and they ³..... people secretly in crowded places and try to steal money or wallets without them noticing. The leader of the gang is a horrible villain who wears a mask ⁴.... disguise his face. None of the children ever see what he really looks like. The film was kind of funny ⁵.... scary but everyone who came to see it thought it was fantastic.

1 a according to
2 a kidnapping
3 a approach
4 a as a result
b so that
c of course
c pickpocketing
d track
t track
t then again

**b** a bit

5

#### 8 Match the sentence halves (1-5 with a-g). There are two more than you need.

1 We did extremely well

**5** a rather than

2 The villain wore a mask

3 The film was kind of scary rather

4 It's ridiculously hot in here

5 Mugging is quite common here so

a in order to disguise his face.

**b** and in fact it's not like that.

c you need to take care.

d when they complained.

e than funny.

c much too

f according to our teacher!

g as a result of having the heater on.

# **B** Final evaluation test

### **Useful language**

#### 9 Choose the correct answer in each case.

- 1 The battery lasts for around 24 hours.
  - a How much longer is it?
  - **b** You're absolutely right.
  - c That's not really long enough.
- 2 Can you tell me a bit more about this smartphone?
  - a That's not much better, I think.
  - **b** That's a good idea.
  - c Of course, what would you like to know?
- 3 Would you like to comment on these rumours?
  - a You must be joking! It's a lot less.
  - **b** I'd like to say that they're totally untrue.
  - c OK, but that is true. Honest!

- 4 I really got into trouble at the weekend.
  - a Did it? Oh, no!
  - **b** So what happened when you found it?
  - c Really? Why was that?
- 5 How about this purple T-shirt?
  - a Maybe we'll see some in the next shop.
  - **b** You should try it on.
  - c I suppose you're right.

10

## Listening

## 10 Listen to Harry talking to his friend Katie about her new camera. Choose the correct answer: a, b or c.

- 1 Who gave Katie her new camera?
  - a her cousin
  - **b** her father
  - c her aunt
- 2 What will Katie do with the photos she's going to take?
  - a enter competitions with them
  - **b** use them to apply for a course
  - c display them for people at her school
- 3 When Harry hears Katie's plans, he wonders if she'll
  - a get the opportunity to prove her talent.
  - **b** have enough determination to succeed.
  - c stay passionate about what she's doing.
- 4 During the summer holiday, Katie wants to
  - a get some work experience.
  - **b** do a short Art course.
  - c look for a part-time job.
- 5 What does Katie decide about Harry's dinner invitation?
  - a She needs to check with her parents first.
  - **b** She turns it down as she has to finish some homework.
  - **c** She's looking forward to trying Harry's food.



## **Final evaluation test**



### Reading

#### 11 Read the story written by a girl called Jill.

#### Meeting Mum's old schoolfriend

#### by Jill Rogers

Let me tell you about something that happened to my mum. She recently got interested in social networking sites, after seeing me spending hours on them. She told me she wanted to find an old friend from her schooldays and then spent a ridiculous amount of time tracking her friend down, which she did eventually. The friend's name was Penny Finn and she was living abroad, but was coming back to London for a few days. Mum told me what she remembered about her. Penny had been kind of stylish and attractive, not very traditional in the way she behaved, and had done very little studying for her exams. Mum told me she had seen Penny as a bit of an idol, someone who had an impressive way of getting people to do what she wanted. She and Mum lost touch soon after leaving school.

Anyway, Penny agreed to see Mum in a big hotel in the centre of town, and Mum promised to take me along with her as I kept asking. I was looking forward to it after hearing so much about this woman. When we arrived in the hotel restaurant, Mum looked around but couldn't see Penny. Then a voice called out Mum's name and we turned round and saw this woman in an armchair. Mum didn't really recognise her – she looked so different. Her hair colour looked really fake – a kind of white-blonde – and she was wearing dark glasses. Anyway, we sat down and Mum introduced me and they started chatting. Penny suggested ordering some food, so they went ahead and ordered some.

When it came to paying, Penny said she'd forgotten her credit card. Mum insisted on paying the bill, and got out hers. Penny picked it up and said she'd take it over to the waiter. Mum and I sat there waiting for her to come back, and eventually we realised she had left – with Mum's credit card!

- 1 What does Jill say about social networking sites?
  - a Jill's mum taught her to use them.
  - **b** Jill found an old friend on one.
  - c Jill went on them very often.
- 2 Jill's mother first got in touch with her schoolfriend Penny Finn after
  - a a long search for Penny online.
  - **b** news about Penny from another friend.
  - **c** Penny arrived in London.
- 3 According to Jill's mother, at school Penny
  - a was a kind person.
  - **b** was somebody that she admired.
  - c was a good student.

- **4** Why did Jill's mum take her daughter to meet Penny?
  - a Jill was keen to meet her mother's friend.
  - **b** Jill's mother was afraid to go alone.
  - c Penny had asked for her to bring her daughter.
- 5 What does Jill say about seeing Penny for the first time?
  - a They noticed her straight away.
  - **b** She was sitting in the dark.
  - c Her hair did not seem natural.

15

### Writing

## 12 Read part of a letter you received from your English-speaking friend, Mel. Write an email to Mel and answer the questions. Write 100–120 words.

I think people my age dress quite fashionably in my country. What about in your country? What do teenagers wear? Is fashion important? And where do they buy their clothes?

15

**Granted points** 

10 10

**Total** 

100

#### **OBSERVATION CHECKLIST**

Read the statements below and choose the most suitable for you. There are no correct or incorrect answers. Through your honest answers, your teacher will get to know you better and understand how to help you progress.

#### When I practised what I learned, I liked to:

- choose the correct answer from several options given. □
- lacktriangle complete the sentences with missing words. lacktriangle
- match sentence halves.
- complete words when the first letter has been given.
- match questions with suitable answers.
  - listen to a recording and solve the comprehension activity.
- read a text and solve the comprehension activity.
- write a text following the steps given.



### Unit 1 /I/ and /i:/

1 🚺 Listen and repeat.

/I/ wind city /i:/ freeze b**ea**ch

2 Listen and choose.

/i/ /I:/ 1 it eat 2 live leave 3 hit heat 4 ship sheep 5 fill feel

3 Match the words to the correct sound.

extreme free heat give listen six swim teach

/I/ give /i:/ extreme

4 Listen, check and repeat.

### Unit 2 ough

**U** Listen and repeat.

enough through thought although

2 Listen and choose the correct sound.

1 I think that's enough. /۸/ /uː/ 2 We walked through the park. /uː/ /٨/ 3 I thought it was scary. /ɔː/ /uː/ 4 Although I like her, she's not my best friend. /n/ /əu/ **5** I bought a new T-shirt yesterday. /ɔː/ /uː/ 6 Even though I'm afraid of insects, I like butterflies. /<sub>\</sub>/\ /<sub>\text{\ti}\\\ \text{\tiliex{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\texi}\titt{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\texi{\texi}\text{\texit{\texi}\text{\texi}\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\tet</sub>

Listen, check and repeat.

### **Unit 3** Intonation in second conditional sentences

- Listen and repeat.
  - 1 If I was rude to the **teacher**, I'd get **detention**.
  - 2 I'd study Art if I went to a Free school.
- falling ( ) intonation on the stressed words in the sentences.
  - 1 If I was headteacher of my school, I would make the lunch breaks longer.
  - 2 If you lived in the UK, your life would be different.
  - 3 I wouldn't give any homework if I was a teacher.
  - 4 I'd go to the cinema if it was my birthday tomorrow.
- 3 Listen, check and repeat.
- 4 Practise saying the sentences in Exercise 2 with the correct intonation.

### Unit 4 Stress in compound words

Listen and repeat.

metal cans glass bottle car tyre earthquake cotton T-shirt solar energy

2 Mark the stress on the compound words.

birthday cake sun cream leather shoes paper plates sun hat sweet wrappers plastic glasses brick wall swimming pool plastic table

**W** Listen, check and repeat.



# Unit 5 Sentence stress in the past perfect

- - 1 We hadn't been to a concert before.
  - 2 I'd forgotten about his birthday.
- 2 Listen and mark the stresses in the sentences.
  - 1 The show had sold out really quickly.
  - 2 We'd wanted to go to that restaurant for ages.
  - 3 What? He hadn't seen that film? Ever?
  - 4 Lots of other people had arrived before us.
  - 5 I hadn't expected to see him there. What a surprise!
- 4 Practise saying the sentences in Exercise 2 with the correct stress.

# **Unit 6** Intonation in relative clauses

- - 1 This is the person that I was telling you about.
  - 2 My aunt has a friend who sells jewellery in the market.
- Listen and mark the rising (✓) and falling
   (➤) intonation on the stressed words.
  - 1 Who's the person that you were talking to?
  - **2** Here are the tickets which I got for you.
  - 3 That's the man who gave me a lift.
  - 4 That's the hotel where we stayed last year.
  - 5 Here is the charger that you lent me the other day.
  - **6** That's the guy whose stall I work on at weekends.
- 4 Practise saying the sentences in Exercise 2 with the correct intonation.

# **Unit 7** Contracted forms in third conditionals

- - 1 If he'd stayed on the path, he wouldn't have killed the butterfly.
  - 2 If he hadn't killed the butterfly, things wouldn't have changed.
  - 3 If he hadn't stepped off the path, would the guide have pointed the gun at him?
- 2 Listen and identify the contracted forms in the sentences.
  - 1 If my friend had not called, I would have stayed at home and watched TV.
  - 2 If the film had not been sold out, we would not have gone for a burger.
  - 3 If I had had some money, I would not have gone to the bank.
  - 4 We would not have seen the man if we had not gone to the bank.
  - 5 I would not have bought a ticket if my friend had not bought one too.
  - 6 If my friend had not called to ask me to go to the cinema, I would not have won a million pounds!
- 3 **(**) Listen, check and repeat.
- 4 Practise saying the sentences in Exercise 2 with the contracted forms.

# **Unit 8** Intonation in indirect questions

- - 1 Could you tell me your views on that, please?
  - 2 Can I ask you what the time is, please?
- Listen and mark the rising ( ) and falling( ) intonation on the stressed words.
  - 1 Could you tell me about your family, please?
  - 2 Can you tell me how old you are, please?
  - 3 Could I ask if you drive a car, please?
  - 4 Can I ask you to repeat that, please?
  - **5** Do you know where the **toi**lets are, **please**?
- 3 Listen, check and repeat.
- 4 Practise saying the questions in Exercise 2 with the correct intonation.



### **Starter Unit**

### Word order in questions

- We form most questions with (question word) + auxiliary verb + subject + main verb phrase. How long do they spend online every day? Are you going to the concert with friends tomorrow?
- When we form questions with be in the present and past simple, we use (question word) + be + subject. Where were you yesterday? Are you worried about something?

### Rewrite the sentences using question words and the interrogative form of the verbs.

- 1 I met him at the theatre. Where did you meet him?
- 2 Sia composed a song for Rihanna called *Diamonds*.
- Sally usually gets up at 8 a.m.
- The concert will take place at the National Arena stadium.
- Josh is crying because he lost his wallet.
- Tina had her last exam on Tuesday.
- 7 I go to music classes twice a week.

### **Subject/object questions**

- We don't use an auxiliary verb when the question word is the subject.
  - Who gave you that pen? ('Karl gave it to me.') What makes you happy? ('Spending time with my friends makes me happy.')
- We use an auxiliary verb when the question word is not the subject.

What did you do at the weekend? ('We went shopping and had a pizza.')

Who do you want to win the football match? ('I want Liverpool to win.')

#### Present perfect with ever, never, for and since

- We often use ever in present perfect questions when the exact time isn't important. We put ever directly after the subject.
  - Has she ever helped you with your homework?
- We often use never to say 'not at any time'. We put never between have/has and the past participle. He's never been to New York.
- We use for and since with the present perfect to say how long something has been true. We use for with periods of time, and since with a reference to a specific time.

She's lived here for seven years. He's worked here since 2007.

#### **Present perfect questions**

To form questions in the present perfect, we use (question word) + have/has + subject + past participle. Has John asked you about borrowing your sleeping

Why have you brought sandwiches? Have they arrived yet? Have you ever been to Australia? How long has she lived in Brazil?

### Present perfect with still, yet, already and just

We use still with negative verbs to express that something we expected has not happened, but imagine it will happen in the future. We put still directly after the subject.

David still hasn't texted me about this weekend.

- We use *yet* with negative verbs to emphasise that something we expected has not happened. We put yet after the complete verb phrase.
  - Lauren hasn't asked her parents about the party yet.
- We also use yet in questions to ask about things we don't think have happened.
  - Have you bought tickets for the football match yet?
- We use already to explain that something happened before we expected or to emphasise it has happened. We usually put *already* between *have/has* and the past participle.
  - Hurry up! James and Lily have already arrived.
- We use just with the present perfect to talk about very recent events and actions. We put just between have/ has and the past participle.
  - I've just heard that you won the race. Well done!

#### Write ONE word in each gap.

- 1 I've *never* been to London have you?
- I've been at this school .... three years.
- 3 We haven't decided .... where to go on holiday.
- Have you studied photography?
- How long is it ..... you last had a pizza in a restaurant?
- My brother hasn't started having his driving lessons ......
- We've been to the beach, so we don't want to go there again this afternoon.
- 8 I've .... listened to Rag'n'Bone Man's music but I'd like to.
- I'm sorry, I can't go out. I ..... haven't finished my homework for tomorrow.

### Present perfect and past simple

We use the past simple to talk about actions and experiences that happened in a time period that is finished.

In 2009, my little sister was born.

We use the present perfect to talk about experiences and facts in the past that happened in a time period that isn't finished.

#### She's bought a lot of new clothes this year.

We also use the present perfect when the exact time of a past action is not mentioned or important. You've left the light on in your room.

### Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the present perfect or past simple.

- 1 We *didn't spend* (not spend) too much money at the mall. Everything was way too expensive.
- 2 When .... (you / go) away on your holiday last year?
- 3 We .... (take) some fantastic pictures during our stay in Corfu Town.
- 4 How long ..... (you / live) in Bucharest now? Is it three years?
- **5** He .... (see) Julia on the beach last weekend.
- 6 We .... (not visit) the Germanisches National Museum yet.
- 7 I ..... (expect) to see your grandparents at the movies.
- 8 Who .... (invent) paper?

#### Present perfect simple vs. present perfect continuous

- We use the present perfect simple to talk about actions that happened at an unstated time in the past and that are connected with the present. He has lost his wallet. (He's still searching for it.)
- We use the present perfect continuous to talk about a series of actions that started in the past, are still in progress and we expect them to continue. It's been raining for more than twelve hours. (It doesn't show signs of stopping.)
- We use the present perfect continuous to emphasise that an activity is ongoing and repeated (emphasis on duration). We use the present perfect simple to show that an activity happened only once or on a specified number of occasions.

Tom and James have been kicking balls all day. (They have played for the national team in 5 matches so far.)

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct present perfect simple and present perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 l've never met (meet) anyone famous.
- 2 Tom ..... (read) for two hours now.
- 3 How long .... it .... (snow)?
- 4 Helen .... (read) 100 pages so far.
- 5 They .... (not have) a holiday in two years.
- 6 How long ..... you ..... (read) that book?
- 7 I .... (expect) to see your grandparents at the movies.
- 8 ..... Kim ever ..... (climb) a mountain?

#### First conditional

We use the first conditional to talk about possible future events, to say what we think the result will be or to introduce certain conditions under which something is true.

If he doesn't answer, I'll never talk to him again. If you push him, he will fall.

- We often use if and the present simple in the if-clause, and will/won't + infinitive in the main clause.
- When we use if to start the sentence, we use a comma between the two sentences. If you leave home now, you'll catch the bus. BUT

You'll catch the bus if you leave now.

#### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Tom won't come (not come) tonight if he is. (be) too busy.
- If you .... (take) more exercise, you .... (start) to feel better.
- 3 Tom .... (not pass) all his exams if he .... (not study) harder.
- 4 If you ..... (have) a social media site account, I ..... (invite) you to be my friend.
- 5 Paul ..... (study) English if he ..... (go) to university.
- 6 If I .... (have) time, I .... (help) you later.

#### Time clauses

Time clauses are introduced by time adverbs such as when, while, before, after, as soon as, until etc. After these adverbs we use the present tense to talk about the future.

When you run, you lose energy. Unless you pay for your meal, you'll have to leave. I'll give you a call as soon as I get home.

#### 6 Choose the correct options.

- 1 John will be pleased if / unless he passes the test.
- 2 They won't get there in time as soon as / unless they hurry.
- 3 Kim will join us as soon as / unless she finishes classes.
- You'll read this book when / if you get older.
- 5 I'll delete the photo if / as soon as you don't like
- 6 If / Unless it rains, I'll bring my umbrella.
- The telephone is one of the most useful / usefully inventions ever.
- 8 When / If this programme finishes, I'll turn off the
- 9 My father will cook for us if / as soon as he returns from the market.

### Unit 1

### Present simple vs. present continuous

We use the present simple to talk about facts, habits and routines.

My sister likes cold weather. I go to school early every day.

He doesn't like fish.

We don't live in Malaga.

Do you live in France?

Where does she live?

We use the present continuous to talk about actions in progress at the time of speaking or around that

Silvia is driving to work this week.

I'm working on my school project at the moment.

We form the affirmative with subject + be + verb +-ing.

I'm reading.

They're listening.

We form the negative with be not + verb + -ing. Not is usually contracted.

You aren't listening. She isn't sleeping.

- We form questions with be + subject + verb + -inq. Is Ana doing her homework?
- In information questions, we put the Wh- question word before be.

Where are they shopping? What book is he reading?

### Complete the conversation. Use the present simple or the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

John: Hello. 1.... (you do) anything at the

moment?

Right now, I<sup>2</sup>....(look after) my brother. Katie:

Why?

What time 3.... (your mum get) home? John:

Katie: She 4.... (work) late every Thursday, so at

about half past seven. Why?

They 5....(show) that new comedy film at John:

the cinema in town. It 6 .... (start) at half past eight. My sister and I 7 .... (think) about going. 8 ... (you want) to come with us?

Yes, please! Let's meet at the cinema Katie:

at eight!

#### Adverbs of frequency

never hardly ever sometimes usually often always

- We use adverbs of frequency to say how often something happens.
- We put them before the main verb but after the verb

It hardly ever snows here.

There are often snowstorms here in winter.

Often, sometimes and usually can also come at the beginning of the sentence.

Sometimes, my family and I have barbecues.

We use adverbs of frequency (always, often, hardly ever ...) with the present simple. We use at the moment and now with the present continuous. My dad often plays computer games with me. My mum is running at the moment.

#### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 washes / the / Theo / never / car Theo never washes the car.
- 2 hardly / watch / TV / They / ever
- 3 late / sometimes / am / school / for / I
- 4 get / marks / exams / good / You / always / in
- 5 on / play / usually / We / football / Wednesdays
- 6 homework / with / often / She / helps me / my

### Past simple vs. past continuous (review)

We use the past simple to talk about completed events and actions in the past. We form regular past tense forms by adding -ed.

I played football yesterday. I walked to school this morning.

We use the past continuous to talk about actions in progress at a certain time in the past.

At lunchtime, it was raining.

We form affirmative sentences with subject + was/ were + verb + -ing.

He was crying.

We weren't listening.

We form the negative with was/were + not (n't) + verb + -ing. Not is usually contracted. They weren't helping to tidy.

### **3** Complete the text. Use the past simple or the past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

When I woke up, it 1 was raining (rain). I 2 (walk) to the bathroom, but my brother 3.... (have) a shower. I 4... (tell) him to be quick and then I 5... (go) to the kitchen. Dad 6 (read) the newspaper, and Mum 7....(listen) to the news.' 8....(you sleep) well?' Dad asked. 'No,' I said, 'I <sup>9</sup>... (have) a very strange dream about a horse in my English class!'

#### Unit 2

### be going to/will/Present continuous (review)

	I	′m			
+	He/She/It	'S			
	We/You/They 're			4 - II la i	
	I	'm not		tell him.	
-	He/She/It	isn't	going to		
	We/You/They	aren't			
	Am	1			
?	ls	he/she/it		tell him?	
	Are	we/you/they			

- We use be going to to talk about future actions we intend to do.
  - After we finish school, I'm going to go to work. My grandparents are going to stay with us at the weekend.
- We use will to talk about predictions in the future. She won't find it - she always gets lost! They'll be late for the party. They always are. \*See Unit 5 for how we form will.
- We use the present continuous to talk about future arrangements when they have a fixed date. They're getting married this summer. She isn't coming to the party.
  - \*See Unit 1 for how we form the present continuous.

#### 1 Choose the correct form to complete the conversation.

- A: What time <sup>1</sup> are you catching) will you catch the bus to London?
- B: Eleven o'clock so I <sup>2</sup> will leave / 'm leaving in ten minutes. I 3 will / 'm going to meet Alex at the bus station.
- A: What 4 are you going to / will you do in London?
- B: Well, I think the weather 5 will be / is being nice so we 6 will / 're going to take a boat ride along the Thames. Then we've got tickets for a walking tour so we're <sup>7</sup> going to meet / meeting our guide at one o'clock in Trafalgar Square.
- A: That sounds like fun. Have a great time.

### Quantifiers – how much/many, (not) enough, too many/much

Countable (plural)		uncountable	both
+	a few	a little	(not) enough
-	too many	too much	(not) enough
?	too many	too much	(not) enough

- We use quantifiers to express the quantity of something.
- When the noun is countable, we always use the plural form.
  - My sister has too many toys.
- We use too + much/many to say that an amount is excessive. The difference between too much and too many is the same as the difference between much and many. Too much is used with singular (uncountable) nouns; too many is used with plurals.
  - There are too many books for one person to carry. They eat too much fast food.
- We use how much/how many to ask about quantity. How much money have you got? How many books are there?
- We use enough to say a quantity is sufficient and not enough to say a quantity is insufficient. I didn't have enough time to answer all the questions.
  - We've got enough players to make two teams.

#### a little/a few

- We use a little and a few to express small quantities. I've got a few emails that I need to reply to. There's a little chocolate ice cream.
- Use a few with plural countable nouns. I've got a few questions about phobias.
- We use a little with uncountable nouns. Can I have a little sugar?

### 2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

too much a few enough how many a little too many

- 1 I had *too much* coffee and now I can't sleep.
- 2 You've got .... sweets put some back.
- 3 I don't think we have money for cake.
- 4 .... students are there in your class?
- 5 There's only .... milk left should I buy some?
- 6 I've got things to do today.

#### Unit 3

### Second conditional - affirmative and negative

	Imaginary situation	Possible consequence
	(if + past simple)	(would + infinitive)
+	If you woke up earlier,	you would arrive on time.
-	If she didn't talk in class,	she wouldn't get detention.
	Consequence	Situation
	(would + infinitive)	(if + past simple)
+	You would arrive on time	if you woke up earlier.
-	She wouldn't get detention	if she didn't talk in class.

Imaginary situation	Possible consequence
(if + past simple)	(would + infinitive)
If I helped you with your homework,	would you lend me your MP3 player?
Would your dad take us to the concert	if you asked him?

- We use second conditional sentences to talk about imaginary situations and the possible consequences.
   Both parts can be affirmative or negative.
   We'd be in Berlin now if we'd caught the early train.
   If he didn't go to work, he wouldn't be so tired.
- We form questions using if + past simple, would(n't) + subject + verb.

If I told you a secret, would you promise not to tell? If I didn't reply to your messages, wouldn't you get angry?

Wouldn't life be better if we had a five-day weekend? You needn't shout, I can hear you very well. What should I do if they bully me? Should we invite him to the party?

## 1 Complete the second conditional sentences. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 If I had (have) time, I'd learn (learn) to knit.
- 2 She .... (not be) late for school if she .... (get up) earlier.
- 3 If they .... (know) the answer, they .... (tell) you.
- 4 Mr Jones (help) you if you (ask) him nicely.
- 5 If I....(meet) Will Smith, I....(ask) for his autograph.
- 6 Our French .... (get) better if we .... (move) to Lyon.

## Write second conditional questions with the prompts.

- 1 we / share a bedroom / how often / we / argue?

  If we shared a bedroom, how often would we argue?
- 2 they / like / it / I / stop / speaking to them?
- 3 What / his parents / say / they / know?
- 4 you / can / have a super power / what / it / be?
- 5 you / live in England / come home / often?
- 6 you/be/me/what/you/do?

#### need/needn't: should/shouldn't

• We can use *need* (*to*) as both an ordinary verb and a modal verb followed by a bare infinitive. As a modal verb, it is used to say that it is necessary or not necessary to do something.

I'm all wet. I need a towel. (= ordinary verb) They go on foot all the time. They don't need a car. (= ordinary verb)

There was an accident on the road. We need to call an ambulance. (= semi-modal verb, very close in meaning to must).

Everything is OK. He needn't worry that much. (= modal verb)

• When it is a modal verb, need (needn't or don't need to) is mostly used in negative sentences, very similar in meaning to don't have to, to show lack of obligation.

I cleaned the window so she needn't bother to do it. You needn't shout, I can hear you very well.

#### Complete the sentences with need/needn't and the bare infinitive of the verbs in the box.

bring come (x2) hurry change help walk

- 1 I have something important to tell you.

  I ...need to come. to your house right now.
- 2 We .... all the way home. We can get a taxi.
- 3 I can't do this alone. You .... me.
- 4 Sam's got plenty of time to catch the bus. He .....
- 5 Tara doesn't get along well with her children. She .... something.
- 6 They .... umbrellas. We've got plenty.
- **7** Pat can stay here. She .... with us.
- We use *should/shouldn't* followed by a bare infinitive to talk about obligations and recommendations, and when we give advice.

You should stop smoking. What should I do if they bully me? You look tired. You shouldn't stay up late. Should we invite him to the party?

Should is not as strong as must or have to.
 You should apologise for being rude. (= suggestion it would be good to do that)
 You must apologise for being rude. / You have to
 apologise for being rude. (= obligation - you have no
 alternative)

### Write sentences to give advice using should/ shouldn't and the prompts.

- 1 I always feel tired at school. You should go to bed earlier. You shouldn't stay up so late.
- 2 Those jeans are very expensive.
- 3 It's my mum's birthday tomorrow.
- 4 Jill told me a secret yesterday.
- 5 My cat is getting very fat.

### Unit 4

### Present simple passive

	This bottle		is made			
+	These toys		are made		of plastic	
	This bottle		isn't made		of plastic.	
	These toys		aren't made			
	Is this b		ottle	made	of plastic?	
f	Are these		e toys			
Yes, it is/they are.				No, it isn't/1	hey aren't.	

We use the passive to describe a process. We are usually not interested in or don't know who does this process.

English is spoken in most shops and restaurants. Credit cards aren't accepted with ID.

To form the present simple passive we use is/are (not) + past participle.

Coffee isn't grown in Europe. The streets are cleaned on Sundays.

- \* See page 175 for a list of irregular past participles.
- We form questions with *is/are* + subject + past participle. We put Wh- question words before is/are. Is the main square decorated in the holidays? When are the exam results emailed to students? How many photos are uploaded a week?
- 1 Use a word from each box to complete the sentences. Use the present simple passive.

bananas spaghetti cakes tea fish chocolate

<del>drink</del> catch cook bake make grow

- 1 *Tea is drunk* in most countries.
- 2 .... from cocoa beans.
- 3 .... in an oven.
- 4 ... in rivers and at sea.
- 5 .... in Jamaica.
- 6 .... in boiling water.

### 2 Rewrite the sentences using the present simple passive.

- 1 They clean the windows every month. The windows are cleaned every month.
- 2 They don't update their blog every day.
- 3 People take a lot of photos on mobile phones.
- 4 The hotel serves breakfast from 7 to 10 a.m.
- 5 Do they give students a certificate at the end of the year?
- 6 People ask a lot of questions in my class.

#### Past simple passive

	The rubbish was	
	The old chairs were	thrown away
	The rubbish wasn't	thrown away.
	The old chairs weren't	
2	Was the rubbish	thrown away?
ŕ	Were the old chairs	tillOvvii away?
Υe	es, it was/they were.	No, it wasn't/they weren't.

We use the past simple passive to describe processes in the past.

Last year, a trip to Italy was organised at the end of term.

The competition winners were given books.

To form the past simple passive we use was/were (not) + past participle.

The first Disney film was made in 1937. Some of us weren't invited to the party.

To form questions we use was/were + subject + past participle. We put Wh- question words before was/were.

Were the instructions written in English? How much money was taken from her bag? In which country was the telephone invented?

### Passive + by

We use by with the passive to show who was responsible for the actions.

A lot of houses were destroyed by the fire. A: Who was the song 'Tell me a lie' recorded by? B: I think it was (recorded by) One Direction.

Complete the text with the past passive form of the verbs in brackets. Use by when

Modern text messages or SMS <sup>1</sup> were invented (invent) in 1992. Early messages 2.... (not write) on a mobile phone, they could only be sent from a computer to a phone. In 1993, the first mobile-to-mobile SMS service 3.... (introduce) in Sweden. It wasn't immediately popular but by 2011 an average of 19.9 billion texts 4.... (send) people every day. In the same year, SMS messages 5.... (replace) chat apps, such as WhatsApp. They 6... (use) to send 19 billion texts a day. Experts think this number is going to double in the next two years.

### Unit 5

### used to and would (review)

+		/He/She/It/We/You/	used to would	wear jeans.	
	l/You	/He/She/It/We/You/	didn't use to	wear jeans.	
	They		wouldn't	wear jeans.	
?	Did	l/you/he/she/it/we/ you/they	use to	wear jeans?	
+	Yes,	l/you/he/she/it/we/you/they		did.	
E	No,	l/you/he/she/it/we/you	didn't.		

 used to emphasises that past habits and states are now finished.

They used to go swimming on Tuesdays.

We use would to describe past habits, but not states.
 When I was a baby, my parents would take me for a walk every afternoon.

You used to have a ponytail. You would have a ponytail.

 We do <u>not</u> use used to or would to talk about things that only happened once or to say how many times something happened.

Last year, I went to France. <del>Last year, I used to go to France.</del>

Yesterday, I called him three times. Yesterday, I would call him three times.

We put question words at the beginning of the question.

What games would you play when you were younger?

## Write sentences about Chloe's grandmother using used to and didn't use to.

Chloe's grandmother was a punk, but her life is different now. In the 1970s, she ...

wore tight trousers. had pink hair. shocked people. broke the rules.

Now, she...

wears long dresses. likes gardening. bakes cakes. follows the rules.

She used to wear tight trousers. She didn't use to wear long dresses.

## Rewrite the sentences in Exercise 1 with would. If would is not possible, write X.

She would wear tight trousers.

#### Future in the past

- We use future in the past when we want to refer to actions or events that we thought would happen in the future at the time we were speaking.
- To form the future in the past, we use the past simple form of the verb will, would, and the base form of the verb without the preposition to (the bare infinitive).

Would + base form of the verb is mostly used to express a promise, to make a prediction or to show a voluntary action. The verbs that are used before would when forming the future in the past are know, think, believe, promise, hope, imagine, realise, expect. He promised he would call us as soon as he arrived in Berlin. (He said/promised he would call us, maybe he did call/maybe he didn't.)

I thought you would help your sister with her homework. (I thought you would help your sister with her homework, maybe you did help her/maybe you didn't.)

We decided we would let go of the past and only live in the present moment.

## **3** Complete the sentences with the future in the past form of the verbs in the box.

become visit like look <del>make</del> not apologise leave

- 1 I knew John .would make dinner tonight. I arrived home very late.
- 2 Keira hoped her son .... a famous fashion designer soon
- 3 I thought you .... the present. I know how much you wanted this watch.
- 4 They decided they .... the city and move to the countryside by the end of the year.
- 5 You promised you .... your grandparents every week! You barely see them.
- 6 I imagined my future .... totally different when I was in my 20s.
- 7 We knew he .... for his rude words. He acted as nothing had happened.

#### Past perfect simple

+	l/You/	'He/She/It/We/You/They	had	ovpostod it
	l/You/	'He/She/It/We/You/They	expected it.	
?	Had	l/you/he/she/it/we/you/the	expected it?	
	Yes,	l/you/he/she/it/we/you/they		had.
	No,	lo, l/you/he/she/it/we/you/they		hadn't.

- We form the past perfect with had + past participle. I'd seen the film before, so I was bored.
- We use the past perfect when we are talking about the past, but want to go back to an earlier time.
   Jack didn't want to come with us because he'd been there last year.
- We do <u>not</u> use the past perfect simply because something happened a long time ago. We use it with other past tenses to clarify the order things happened. Ashley didn't get the email because I had typed Ash 55, not Ash-55.

We put guestion words at the beginning of the

How far had you walked before you realised you were lost?

#### Complete the sentences with the past perfect form of the verbs in the box.

go <del>not tell</del> not win not meet miss not remember

- 1 I didn't know. You *hadn't told* me.
- 2 My aunt wasn't at home. She .... out.
- He didn't have a present for me. He my birthday.
- 4 I met Ann for the first time last week. I .... her before.
- It was the first game we won. We .... a game before.
- 6 Judit arrived late. She ... the seven o'clock train.

### Write past perfect questions with the prompts. Answer them using the information in brackets.

- 1 he / receive / your email? (X) Had he received your email? No, he hadn't.
- 2 you / save / some money? (✓)
- 3 she / bring / her skateboard? (x)
- 4 Where / had / they / be? (shopping)
- 5 you / hear / of that book? (x)
- 6 What / had / the dog / eat? (my shoes!)

### Past perfect continuous

	l/You/	working very		
	l/You/	'He/She/It/We/You/They	hadn't been	hard.
?	Had	I/You/He/She/lt/We/You/They		been working hard?
	Yes,	I/You/He/She/It/We/You	had.	
	No,	I/You/He/She/It/We/You/They had		hadn't.

- We form the past perfect continuous with had + past participle of the verb be (been) + -ing form of the verb. I had been walking for an hour when I realised I was completely lost.
- We use the past perfect continuous to show that an event or action in the past was still continuing. We use the past perfect continuous when we are talking about the past, but want to put emphasis on the duration of an action which started and finished in the past, before another action or stated time in the past.
- Past perfect continuous emphasises a continuing or ongoing action, while past perfect simple emphasises the completion of the action.

I'd been finishing my homework when Dad arrived, so I didn't hear him come in.

- I'd finished my homework when Dad arrived, so I didn't hear him come in.
- I'd finished my homework, so I started tidying up my room. <del>I'd been finishing my homework, so I started</del> tidying up my room.
- The past perfect simple suggests something more permanent than the past perfect continuous, which can imply that something is temporary. Some verbs are not used very often in the continuous form: know, like, understand, believe, hear, smell, taste, start, stop. We'd known each other for a long time before we started working on this project. We'd been knowing each other for a long time before we started working on this project. Had they started the game on time? Had they been starting the game on time?

#### Past perfect continuous vs. past continuous tense

Both past continuous and past perfect continuous tenses can be used to talk about actions or situations that were in progress at a certain point of time in the past. While the past continuous shows continuity, the past perfect continuous tense is mainly used to indicate the duration of a past activity or state.

### 6 Complete the sentences with the past perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 When I found Sally, I could see that she had been crying (cry).
- 2 I was tired because I ... (play) the guitar for a long time.
- 3 Her teacher was very angry with her because she .... (come) to class very late.
- 4 We didn't find out the latest news because we .... (not watch) TV.
- 5 She had a terrible migraine because she ... (not sleep) well lately.
- 6 He got bad marks because he .... (not study) hard.

#### Correct the error in each sentence.

- 1 Lucy had been finishing her homework by six o'clock. had finished
- 2 I was tired because I was reading most of the afternoon.
- 3 I waited for an hour already when their plane landed.
- 4 They had played in the garden when the storm began.
- 5 My brother was eating the whole cake before we came back.
- 6 The train had been leaving before we reached the station.

### Unit 6

## The passive: present simple, past simple (review) and *will*

- We use the passive when we don't know or are not interested in who does an action.
- To form the passive, we use the appropriate form of be + past participle.

Millions of emails are sent every day. (present simple – am/is/are) Ethan wasn't invited to the party. (past simple – was/were) The fridge will be repaired tomorrow. (will + be)

- We use the present simple passive to talk about facts in the present.
  - In the USA, 2.5 million plastic bottles are thrown away every hour.
- We use the past simple passive to talk about facts in the past.
  - Last year, all the lights at school were fitted with more efficient LED light bulbs.
- We use will with the passive to talk about future facts and actions we believe will happen in the future.
   Exam results will be emailed to students next week.
- We use by with the passive to show who was responsible for an action.
  - The book was written by an expert in recycling.
- To form questions, we use the appropriate form of be + past participle. We put Wh- question words before be.
  - Was the light bulb really invented by Edison? Where is the most coffee drunk in the world?
- To form short answers to Yes/No passive questions, we use the appropriate form of be:
   Is much electricity saved with these light bulbs?
   Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.
   Was it invented by a famous scientist?
   Yes, it was. / No, it wasn't.
- To form short answers to Yes/No future passive questions, we use will/won't:
   Will the bottle tops be recycled?
   Yes, they will. / No, they won't.

# 1 Complete the text. Use the present simple or past simple passive form of the verbs in brackets.

The first crisps ¹ were created (create) in 1853 by a restaurant chef in New York state. However, crisps ²... (not sold) in bags for over 50 years, until the crisp bag ³... (develop) by businesswoman Laura Scudder. Flavoured crisps ⁴... (not invented) until the 1950s. While a plain crisp contains only potatoes, oil and salt, a flavoured crisp ⁵... (make) using over 30 ingredients! In the UK, six billion bags of crisps ⁶... (eat) each year. In the USA, crisps ⊓... (not call) crisps, in fact, but 'potato chips' are also very popular there. 680 million kilograms в ... (enjoy) each year around the world!

Complete the future predictions with the passive. Use the verbs in the box and will (not).

do elect not wear build not fly

- 1 In 2030, all farm work will be done by robots.
- 2 In 2035, glasses .... because people will have high resolution bionic eyes.
- 3 In 2027, the first 10km high skyscraper .....
- 4 In 2030, aeroplanes .... by pilots, computers will fly them.
- 5 In 2040, the first world government .....

#### **Relative pronouns**

- We use relative pronouns at the beginning of relative clauses. We use relative clauses to say which person, place or thing we are talking about.
  - My aunt has a friend that makes lovely candles.
- We do not repeat the subject pronoun.
   We know a lot of people who live in the village.
   We know a lot of people who they live in the village.
- We use who or that to talk about people.
   The man who/that lives next door to us spends every day in the garden.
- We use where to talk about places.
   That's the office where my mum works.
- We use which or that to talk about things.
   I really don't like films which/that have sad endings.
- We use whose to talk about possessions.
   Do you remember the name of the guy whose phone charger I borrowed last week?

## 3 Complete the sentences with relative pronouns.

- 1 That's the guy who works in the café in King Street.
- 2 I know a girl .... dad sells old books.
- 3 She wants something .... she can use to keep her photos in.
- 4 William really liked the present .... we gave him.
- **5** They went to the park .... the tennis courts are.
- 6 The man and woman .... are eating ice creams know my parents.

#### 4 Correct the error in each sentence.

- 1 This is the place which I bought my blue shirt. where
- 2 The woman whose wearing a blue top is my aunt.
- 3 I first saw it on a blog what I follow.
- **4** The invention that it changed the world was the wheel.
- 5 I called the brother of the guy who mobile I found.
- 6 One thing which she told me it was very interesting.

### Unit 7

#### Third conditional

	Imaginary past situation	Imaginary past consequence
	(if + past perfect)	(would have + past participle)
+	If I had seen your email,	I would have called you.
-	If I hadn't seen your email,	I wouldn't have called you.
	Imaginary past consequence	Imaginary past situation
	(would have + past participle)	(if + past perfect)
+	I would have called you	if I had seen your email.
-	I wouldn't have called you	if I hadn't seen your email.

- We use the third conditional to talk about imaginary situations in the past and the imaginary past consequences.
- We use if + past perfect (affirmative or negative) to describe the imaginary past situation. The story would have been better if the hero hadn't quessed that Martha was a witch.
- We use would (not) + have + past participle when we are sure of the imaginary past consequence. We would have seen my brother's new car if he'd been at home.
- We often use the third conditional to talk about things we regret doing.
  - If I hadn't posted the photo on Facebook, my parents wouldn't have found out.
- We can form questions about the imaginary past results of imaginary past situations with if + pastperfect, (question word) + would (not) + subject + have + past participle.

If you'd known the battery was so bad, would you have bought the same mobile? What would you have done differently if you'd been there?

### 1 Complete each sentence with the correct form of a pair of verbs from the box.

not be + take not go + not recommend miss + not check forget + call catch + not arrive have + study

- 1 If he *hadn't forgotten* his phone, he 'd have called
- 2 Lucas ... cold if he ... a coat with him.
- 3 They the concert if Abby the time online.
- 4 If I ... the bus at twelve o'clock, I ... late.
- **5** She ... to see the film if I ... it.
- 6 If I ... more time, I ... more.

### must have, can't have, might/may/could have for talking about possibility and making deductions

- We often use must have, can't have, might/may/could have + past participle to explain why something has happened or suggest what we think has happened. My parents can't have forgotten my birthday, so they must have planned a surprise. He may have asked Angelo or he might have asked Paulo. He can't remember!
- We use *must have* when we feel our explanation is certainly correct. She isn't answering my texts. She must have gone
- We use can't have to reject explanations for what has happened.
  - She can't have told him. She doesn't know.
- We use *might/may/could have* when we feel our explanation is possibly correct. I might have left it on the bus. I don't remember putting it back in my bag. . They may have gone to the pool. It's very hot today. Ben could have decided not to come. Or perhaps his train is late.
- We can also use could have to suggest possible explanations for why something has happened. You could have downloaded a file with a virus, so we'll check that first.
- We form Yes/No questions with could + subject + have + past participle. Could aliens have visited our planet without us knowing?
- We form Wh- questions with question word + must/can't/might/may/could + have + past participle. Why might she have kidnapped him? I thought it was Tyrion! Let's watch another episode! Where could Mum have hidden my trainers?

### **2** Choose the correct options.

- 1 She may have / can't have gone out. I can hear music playing in her room.
- 2 Sorry, I might have / must have left my phone on silent by mistake. I'll change it now.
- 3 They can't have / must have seen Tom. He's on holiday in Cyprus this week.
- 4 He can't have / might have decided to stay at home. Ian said he wasn't feeling well.
- 5 I must have / may have found all the information we need, but you need to check to be sure.

#### Write sentences with the prompts.

- 1 Erin / must / get lost Erin must have got lost.
- 2 I / could / leave them at home
- 3 She / can't / hear
- 4 They/may/go home
- 5 Someone / might / lose it

### should for present/future expectation

We use *should* to indicate that we think something is probable (we expect it to happen) or we expect it to take place but we aren't 100% sure of that. Are you ready? The train should be here soon. (present) £5 is enough. It shouldn't cost more than that. Let's call Sam. She should know the way to the park. (future)

#### 4 Complete the sentences with should/shouldn't and a suitable infinitive.

- 1 Can you please help your grandma to do the work? It shouldn't take long.
- 2 You slept more than 9 hours. You .... so tired.
- 3 I ordered the books two days ago. They .... here by
- This film has good reviews. It .... worth watching.
- 5 This is a restaurant with decent prices. This dish .... so expensive!
- 6 Can you show him the way to his new classroom? It .... only .... a few minutes.
- 7 He left home early. He ... here any minute.

### **Unit 8**

### **Reported statements**

When we report somebody's words, we often have to change the verb forms.

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present simple 'I want a new bike.'	Past simple She said (that) she <b>wanted</b> a new bike.
Present perfect 'They <b>'ve</b> never <b>told</b> anyone.'	Past perfect He said (that) they <b>had</b> never <b>told</b> anyone.
Past simple 'They <b>spent</b> the night in a police cell.'	Past perfect You told me (that) they <b>had</b> <b>spent</b> the night in a police cell.
will 'They'll give us a book to read.'	would You told us (that) they <b>would</b> give us a book to read.
can 'I <b>can</b> help him.'	could She said (that) she <b>could</b> help him.

We often have to change other words too, such as pronouns and time references.

'I'll show you the false passports tomorrow.' He said he'd show me the false passports the next dav.

'You didn't see me last weekend.' She told us that we hadn't seen her the weekend before.'

We don't need to change the verb forms if the situation is still true at the time of reporting or if it's imaginary.

'My name is Sophia.'

She said that her name is Sophia.

'If I committed a crime, I wouldn't talk about it online.'

He said that if he committed a crime, he wouldn't talk about it online.

### 1 Rewrite the reported statements as direct speech.

- 1 He told us that he was very sorry. ' am very sorry '
- 2 The police said they'd caught the criminals. 'We .....'
- 3 Evan and Abby told me they could help me look after my cousin. 'We .....'
- 4 I said that I would call him after five o'clock. '[.....'
- **5** We told her that he loved listening to music. 'He .....'

### Reported questions

When we report questions, we usually make the same changes to the verb forms, pronouns and time references as we do when we report statements.

- When we report questions with a question word, we don't add an auxiliary verb and the word order is the same as in affirmative sentences.
  - He asked me what I'd done at the weekend. He asked me what had I done at the weekend.
- When we report Yes/No questions, we use if. 'Did you tell the truth?' They asked him if he'd told the truth.
- We don't use a question mark in reported questions. 'Where did you go after school?' My parents asked me where I'd been after school.

### 2 Rewrite the guestions as reported guestions.

- 1 'Do you know anybody at this party?' They asked me if I knew anybody at the party...
- 2 'How long will you be in Italy for, Simon?' She .....
- 3 'Joe, how much money did they steal?' He ....
- 4 'Can you tell me your password?' Dad .....
- 5 'What do you want for your birthday?' They .....

### **Indirect questions**

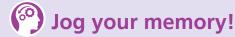
	Direct <i>Wh-</i> question	Indirect question		
	Where is the bank?	Can/Could you tell me Can/Could I ask you	where the bank is?	
		I was wondering	where the bank is.	
	Direct <i>Yes</i> / <i>No</i> question	Indirect question		
	Do you know this man?	Can/Could you tell me if	you know this man?	
		Can/Could I ask you if	IIIdII?	
		I was wondering if	you know this man.	

- Indirect questions feel softer and more polite than direct questions. In the first part of indirect questions, we use fixed phrases such as Can/Could you tell me ... ?, Do you know ... ? and I was wondering ... .
- When we form indirect questions with a question word, we don't add an auxiliary verb and the word order is the same as in affirmative sentences. I was wondering where the kidnappers hid. I was wondering where did the kidnappers hide.
- To form indirect Yes/No questions, we use if. Can I ask you if you think she was brave?

#### 3 Correct the error in each sentence.

- 1 I was wondering <del>do</del> you have this shirt in a medium. if
- 2 Can you tell us where is the market?
- 3 Excuse me, do you know what time it starts the film?
- 4 I was wondering that you could help me.
- 5 Can I ask you how long did you wait there?





1 Cover the rest of the page. How many words to describe extreme weather and survival essentials can you remember?



### Extreme weather (page 13)

boiling heavy rain freezing high winds hail snowstorm heatwave thunder and lightning sunny dry

drizzle

Look at the words in the box. Write sentences about when you have experienced these weather conditions.

I went on holiday to Spain last year. It was boiling.

2 Work with a partner. Talk about your sentences. Where were you and what was the weather like?

### Survival essentials (page 16)

sun cream first aid kit map water bottle sleeping bag camera sunglasses penknife glasses compass torch contact lenses

- Look at the words in the box. What do you pack when you go on holiday?
- Add three more items to the list that you usually pack on a holiday.



### **Explore prepositional phrases** (page 19)

a ship the internet the planet both directions the island

Look at the words in the box. Write the words in the correct column.

in	on
	a ship

2 Add these words to the correct column.

October South Africa the middle television total Earth

hail - grindină



### Study tip

Keep a record of all your new words. You can write a translation or a definition in your vocabulary notebook or on cards.







## Jog your memory!

1 Cover the rest of the page. How many words to describe fears and adjectives can you remember?





#### Fears (page 23)

birds	flying	insects	snakes
clowns	heights	lifts	the dark

Look at the words in the box. Write the fears in the correct column.

animals	people	things
birds		

2 Can you add three more fears to the list?

### -ed and -ing adjectives (page 26)

bored / boring excited / exciting terrified / terrifying tired / tiring interested / interesting worried / worrying

1 Look at the words in the box. Write six sentences. Use three -ing adjectives and three -ed adjectives.

That film was really boring. I'm terrified of spiders.



### Explore prepositional phrases (page 24)

embarrassed .... share something ... someone terrified .... think worried

- Look at the words in the box. Write the correct preposition (of, about or with) to make prepositional phrases.
- 2 Do these words go with about or of? Which two words match both about and of?

afraid	talk	fear	think
nightmare	scared	phobia	excited

3 Write four sentences about yourself. I always get excited about parties.



### **Explore opposite** adjectives (page 29)

bad modern safe sensible unlucky unsuccessful

dangerous good lucky old silly successful

Look at the words in boxes. Match the opposite adjectives.

bad/good

- 2 You can add un- to one more adjective to make it opposite. Which adjective is it? Can you think of any other adjectives that you can add the prefix un- to?
- 3 Choose four of the words. Write four sentences using the words.

unlucky, unsuccessful



### Study tip

Write prefixes in a different colour.









## Jog your memory!

1 Cover the rest of the page. How many school words can you remember?





### Life at school (page 37)

be	hand	wear	bullying	get
scream	write	cheat	get	

a uniform in a test on time detention in homework or shout good marks lines

- Look at the words in the boxes. Match them to make phrases about life at school. There is one word which doesn't match anything. Which word is it?
- 2 Look back at page 37 and check your answers.
- 3 Talk to your partner. What happens in your school? Use the words in the box to discuss.

### make vs. do (review) (page 40)

a mess a decision a mistake friends a noise something interesting a phone call the right thing an exercise your homework

Look at the words in the box. Match the words with the correct verbs.

make	do
a mess	

- 2 Look back at page 40 and check your answers.
- **3** Work with a partner. Test him/her. Close your books. Say a word. Your partner says the correct verb, make or do.



### Explore phrasal verbs (1) (page 43)

find out work out try out pick up write out

1 Look at the definitions on page 43 again. Write a sentence with each phrasal verb that is personal to you and shows its meaning.

I like finding out about other countries. It's interesting.

2 Look at these phrasal verbs with out and up. Discuss their meaning with a partner. Use a dictionary to help you.

log out go out look up drop out grow up hang up



### Study tip

Listen to music and watch films to help you learn new vocabulary. Remember to write new words in your vocabulary notebook.







- Cover the rest of the page. How many words to describe materials and energy issues can you remember?
- 2 Give some examples of ways through which we can rescue the environment.



### Materials (page 47)

bricks metal cement paper cotton plastic rubber glass leather wood

1 Look at the words in the box. Think about your house. Write an object you can find there for each type of material in the box.

bricks - my garden wall

2 Work with a partner. Take turns to read your descriptions and guess the material.

A: My favourite T-shirt! B: Cotton?

### Energy issues (page 50)

consume leave on standby reduce save energy switch off turn down waste

- Turn to page 50. Look at the definitions again.
- 2 Can you remember them all? Give examples of what you do to save energy in your house.

I never leave the TV on standby.



### Explore phrasal verbs (2) (page 53)

bring down knock cut put . . . . keep

- Look at the verbs in the box. Write down, on or up to make a phrasal verb.
- 2 Check your answers on page 53. Can you think of an example sentence for each phrasal verb? When they brought down the price of the laptop, I had enough money to buy it.

consume (verb) [T] /kən'sjuːm/ to use fuel, energy or time, especially in large amounts



### Study tip

Use a dictionary to check how words are spelt, the pronunciation and the type of word it is.







1 Cover the words. How many words under each heading can you remember?

Clothes Adjectives and dependent prepositions



### Clothes (page 61)

a baggy jumper a leather jacket
a cool T-shirt a silk scarf
a denim skirt a stripy shirt
a fitted coat flat shoes
a flowery dress tight jeans

- 1 Look at the words in the box. Look at the questions and write sentences.
  - 1 What clothes do you like wearing?
  - 2 What are your favourite items of clothing?
  - 3 What sorts of clothes don't you like wearing?
- **2** Compare your sentences with a partner.

# Adjectives and dependent prepositions (page 64)

afraid of happy with disappointed by interested in excited about keen on fascinated by proud of

1 Look at the words in the box. Write true and false sentences for you using the adjectives and prepositions.

I'm fascinated by time travel.

2 Work with a partner. Say your sentences and guess which are true and which are false.



### Explore compound nouns (page 67)

guitar style motor taxi street telephone band corners box fare changes industry

- 1 Look at the words in the boxes. Match them to make compound nouns.
- 2 How many other compound nouns can you remember with the words in the first box? Look back at page 67 and check your answers.
- 3 Use a dictionary to find other compound nouns with the words in the first box.

telephone book (n)
a big book with a list
of telephone numbers
for ...



### Study tip

Use a dictionary to expand your vocabulary and check your spelling.









## Jog your memory!

1 Cover the words. How many words under each heading can you remember?

Everyday objects Modifiers





### **Everyday objects** (page 71)

candle matches charger plug

fan remote control

heater switch light bulb tap

- 1 Look at the words in the box. Which objects ...
  - need electricity?
  - need batteries?
  - give light?
  - do you have in your house?
  - do you use every day?

### Modifiers (page 74)

a bit	much too	ridiculously
extremely	quite	totally
kind of	really	

safe better expensive / cheap stylish hot / cold unusual kind / unkind wrong

1 Look at the words in the boxes. Write sentences about you. Use a modifier and an adjective in each sentence.

It's always ridiculously hot in our classroom.

2 Work with a partner. Do you agree or disagree? I don't agree. I think it's quite cold in our classroom in winter.



### Explore communication phrases and phrasal verbs (page 77)

catch up chat keep in touch lose touch track down

emailing making a WhatsApp video call textina Tweeting with X

1 Look at the words in the boxes. Write sentences about how you communicate with your friends and family.

I keep in touch with my grandparents by texting them.

- 2 Look at the text on page 77. Can you find the verb that completes both collocations below?
  - .... the family together .... an eye on someone
- 3 Use a dictionary to check the meanings of these phrasal verbs with keep.

keep up with keep in with

> When I made new friends, I lost touch with my friends from primary school.



### Study tip

Write sentences that relate to your own life to help you remember words and phrases.



## Jog your memory!

1 Cover the words. How many words under each heading can you remember?

Story elements Linking phrases





### Story elements (page 85)

action plot
hero setting
main character(s) suspense
mystery villain

- 1 Look at the words in the box. Which words describe ...
  - people in a story?
  - where the story takes place and what happens?
  - the type of story it is?
- 2 Talk to your partner. Can you make a list of famous heroes and villains from books or films? Why were they so good or bad?

### Linking phrases (page 88)

according to of course as a result of rather than in fact so that in order to then again

1 Look at the words in the box. Write sentences about your list of heroes and villains using the linking phrases.

Batman wore a black suit in order to disguise who he was.

Darth Vader was in fact good when he was younger – he wasn't always a villain.

Work with a partner. Read your sentence but don't say who the hero or villain is. Your partner guesses the person.

## **Explore prepositions and adverbs of movement** (page 86)

approach float run step turn above around back off through towards

- 1 Turn to page 86. Look at the prepositions and adverbs of movement in the text for one minute.
- 2 Can you remember them all? Match the words in the boxes.

Choose the correct prepositions and adverbs to complete the story. Write the new prepositions and adverbs of movement in your notebook.

The woman ran ¹out of / up the shop and ²along / away the road, chasing the villain in the black mask. She followed him ³back / over the railway bridge and then ⁴out of / across a deep river. As she chased him ⁵across / up the hill, a police helicopter flew into sight. The masked villain ran ⁶away / over from the helicopter but straight ¹along / back to the woman who was waiting in the path. She was able to hold him until the police arrived. What a hero!



### Study tip

Write simple sentences and draw diagrams in your notebook to help you remember prepositions and adverbs of movement.





## Jog your memory!

Cover the words. How many words under each heading can you remember?

Crimes Reporting verbs





### Crimes (page 95)

arson pickpocketing illegal downloading robbery kidnapping shoplifting mugging vandalism

Look at the words in the box. Choose a word. Don't tell your partner. Describe the word. Can your partner guess what it is?

This is when a person takes another person and asks for money to give them back.

### Reporting verbs (page 98)

admit	decide	promise
agree	explain	suggest
complain	insist	

- 1 Turn to page 98. Look at the definitions again.
- Can you remember them all? Give examples about you using the verbs.

I suggested that my friend and I did our homework together tonight.

I promised that I'd take my little sister to the cinema.

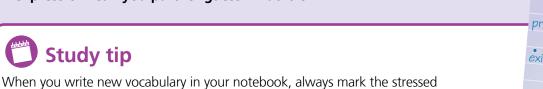


syllables clearly.

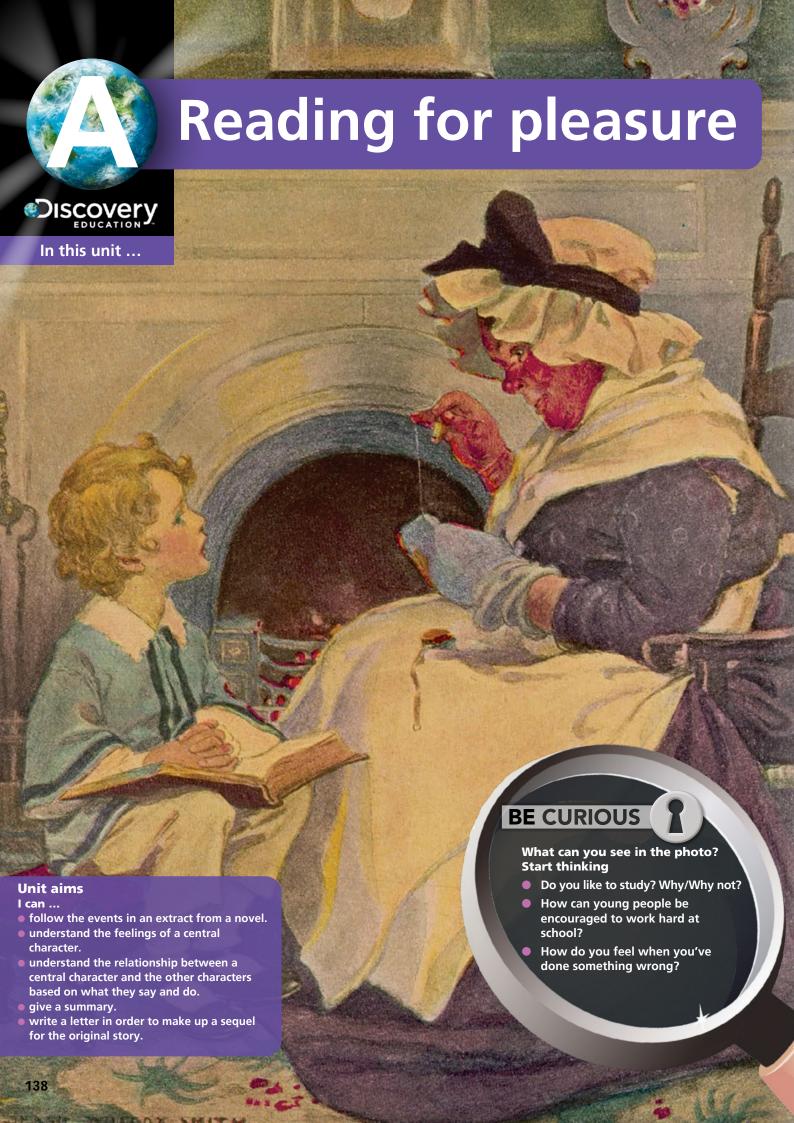
## Explore verb expressions (page 101)

come into existence run out of date back to see the point take care go ahead

- 1 Look at the verb expressions in the box. Check the meaning of any of these expressions that you don't remember on page 101.
- 2 Write a sentence to show the meaning of each expression in your notebook.
- 3 Work with a partner. Say your sentence but don't say the expression. Can you partner guess what it is?







### **Reading** A long extract from a bildungsroman

- 1 You are going to read part of a novel by the famous English writer, Charles Dickens. Read the information below and answer the questions.
  - 1 When was Charles Dickens born?
  - 2 Which of his novels are the most famous? Have you read any of these novels?
  - 3 When was David Copperfield published?
  - 4 Do you know of any bildungsroman in English or in Romanian? Give examples.
  - 5 Choose a bildungsroman you know and research the key events. Then present your ideas to the class.
- The main character in *David Copperfield* is a boy who lives with his mother, Clara, his stepfather, Edward Murdstone, and Peggotty, their servant. Jane, his stepfather's sister, is visiting. The Murdstones treat David badly.

Read the text quickly and answer the questions.

1 Why is David punished?
2 How does he react?



**Charles Dickens** 

(1812-1870) was born in Portsmouth, England. His most known works include *A Christmas* Carol (1843), David

Copperfield (1850) and Great

Expectations (1860). He had a happy childhood until he was ten when the family moved to London. His father had financial difficulties and went to prison for debt. This changed Charles's life as he had to leave school and go to work in a factory. He later finished his education and became a journalist. Many of his novels, including David Copperfield (1850), were written as serial publications: one or two chapters were published each month. Through his novels, Dickens hoped to raise awareness of the extreme poverty that was affecting many families in London at the time.

A bildungsroman is a novel that focuses on the psychological and moral development of the *protagonist*. It shows us how their character has changed in response to key events in their lives. There are usually many obstacles in their way.

One morning when I went into the parlour with my books, I found my mother looking anxious, Miss Murdstone looking firm, and Mr. Murdstone tying something to the \*cane that he was waving up and down in the air.

'I tell you, Clara,' said Mr. Murdstone, 'I have been often \*flogged myself.'

'To be sure; of course,' said Miss Murdstone.

'Certainly, my dear Jane, but do you think it did Edward good?' asked my mother hesitantly. [...]

I felt this dialogue concerned me, and sought Mr. Murdstone's eye as it lighted on mine.

'Now, David,' he said, 'you must be far more careful today than usual.' He waved the cane again; and having finished his preparation of it, laid it down beside him, with an impressive look, and took up his book. This was a good freshener to my presence of mind, as a beginning. I felt the words of my lessons slipping off, not one by one, or line by line, but by the entire page. I saw Mr Murdstone wink, solemnly, at his sister, as he rose and said, taking up the cane:

'Why, Jane, we can hardly expect Clara to bear the worry and torment that David has occasioned her today. Clara is greatly strengthened and improved, but we can hardly expect so much from her. David, you and I will go upstairs, boy.'

'Mr Murdstone! Sir!' I cried to him. 'Don't beat me! I have tried to learn, sir, but I can't learn while you and Miss Murdstone are by. I can't indeed!'

'Can't you, indeed, David?' he said. 'We'll try that.' [...]

It was only a moment that I stopped him, [...] and in the same instant I caught the hand with which he held me in my mouth, between my teeth, and bit it through. It sets my teeth on edge to think of it.

He beat me then, as if he would have beaten me to death. Above all the noise we made, I heard them running up the

stairs, and crying out – I heard my mother crying out – and Peggotty. Then he was gone; and the door was locked outside; and I was lying, fevered and hot, and torn, and sore, and \*raging upon the floor.

\*cane a long stick used to maintain good posture or even as a fashion accessory

\*flog to beat someone very hard with a whip or a stick, as a punishment

\*rage strong anger that you cannot control

#### 3 What do you think happens next? Read the next part of the text to find out.

It had begun to grow dark, and I had shut the window when the key was turned, and Miss Murdstone came in with some bread and meat, and milk. These she put down upon the table without a word, \*glaring at me, and then retired, locking the door after her. Long after it was dark I sat there, wondering whether anybody else would come. When this appeared \*improbable, I undressed, and went to bed; and, there, I began to wonder what would be done to me. Whether it was a criminal act that I had committed? Whether I should be taken into \*custody, and sent to prison? Whether I was in danger of being hanged?

Miss Murdstone reappeared next morning before I was out of bed; told me I was free to walk in the garden for half an hour. I did so every morning of my imprisonment, which lasted five days. On the last night, I was awakened by hearing my own name spoken in a whisper.

'Is that you, Peggotty?' I asked.

'Yes, my own precious Davy,' she replied. 'Be as soft as a mouse, or the Cat will hear us.' I understood this to mean Miss Murdstone, as her room was close by.

'How's Mama, dear Peggotty? Is she very angry with me?'

'No. Not very.'

'What is going to be done with me?'

'School. Near London,' was Peggotty's answer.

'When, Peggotty?'

'Tomorrow.'

'Shan't I see Mama?'

'Yes,' said Peggotty. 'Morning.'

In the morning Miss Murdstone appeared as usual. She informed me that I was to come downstairs into the parlour, and have my breakfast. There, I found my mother, very pale and with red eyes. I ran into her arms, and \*begged her pardon from my suffering soul.

'Oh, Davy!' she said. 'Try to be better! I forgive you; but I am so grieved, Davy, that you should have such bad passions in your heart.'

They had persuaded her that I was a wicked \*fellow, and she was more sorry for that than for my going away. I tried

to eat my parting breakfast, but my tears dropped upon my bread-and-butter into my tea. I saw my mother look at me sometimes, and then glance at the watchful Miss Murdstone, and then look down, or look away.

'Master Copperfield's box there!' said Miss Murdstone.

I looked for Peggotty, but neither she nor Mr. Murdstone appeared. My former \*acquaintance, the carrier, was at the door. The box was taken out to his cart, and lifted in. [...] Miss Murdstone was good enough to take me out to the cart, and to say on the way that she hoped I would \*repent, before I came to a bad end; and then I got into the cart, and the lazy horse walked off with it.

- \*glare to look directly and continuously at someone or something in an angry way
- \*improbable not likely to happen or be true
- \*custody the state of being kept in prison, especially while waiting to go to court for trial
- \*beg to ask for something in a strong and emotional way
- \*fellow a way of referring to a man or a boy
- \*acquaintance someone that you have met, but do not know well
- \*repent to be very sorry for something bad you have done in the past and wish that you had not done

# 4 Read the whole text again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones and write DS if the text doesn't say.

- 1 Miss Murdstone is hurting David because he isn't good at his lessons.
- 2 The boy thinks he could be sent to prison or shot.
- 3 When David first wakes up, he feels miserable.
- 4 Peggotty and David are separated by Miss Murdstone when they are speaking.
- 5 David's mother hates her husband.
- 6 David will see his mother again before leaving.
- **7** David spent one minute planning to attack his stepfather.
- 8 Peggotty compares Miss Murdstone to a cat.

## 5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

fellow acquaintance cane begging glared rage

- 1 He screamed with .... and threw all of his things on the floor.
- 2 I've only met him once or twice. He isn't my friend, but an .....
- 3 The girl was cold and hungry and was .... for money in the street.
- **4** Lucy was angry with her little cousin and .... at him when he told their aunt the truth.
- 5 I've heard Tom is an unusual ....; we haven't met him yet though.
- 6 Jen used a wheelchair immediately after her operation and now she walks with a .....



### Your turn

6 Work in pairs. David tells the cart driver what his life has been like with the Murdstones. Student A is David, student B is the driver. Read the beginning of the conversation, complete the sentences and then continue it with your own ideas. Use expressions for complaining and a variety of tenses.

**David:** I'm really not happy with my life at the

moment. Mr Murdstone ...

**Driver:** Oh really, Master Copperfield? I'm sorry

to hear that. What else ...

**David:** Well, he's always ... **Driver:** To be honest, I don't ...

### 

- a David is worried about the amount of money he's spending.
- **b** Steerforth claims they share the same room.
- **c** David tells Steerforth he doesn't want to spend his money.
- **d** David meets Steerforth in the playground.
- e Steerforth lays all of the food on David's bed.
- **f** David gives Steerforth the money from Peggotty's purse.

### 

After a while at the school, David meets an older boy called Steerforth. Steerforth is sympathetic and says it is a ¹s\_\_\_\_ that David was punished. Steerforth suggests that David gives him his ²m\_\_\_\_ to look after. He then convinces David to spend his money on currant ³j\_\_\_\_, almond ⁴c\_\_\_\_, biscuits and ⁵f\_\_\_\_. David doesn't want to <sup>6</sup>w\_\_\_\_ the money, which was his <sup>7</sup>m\_\_\_\_\_. At bedtime he sees all of the food and drink that Steerforth bought with his money.





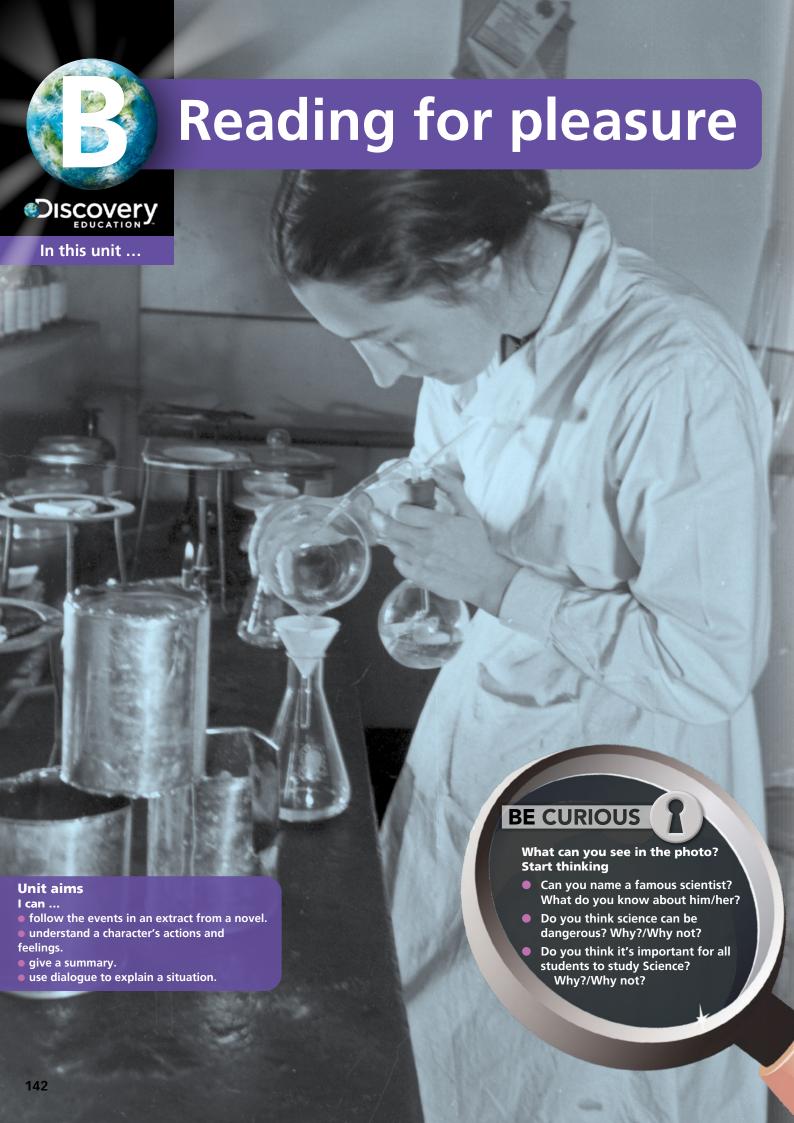
## Get writing – Portfolio

### PLAN

- 9 Imagine the scene after David has spent his first term at his new school. Write a letter from David to his mother describing what the school is like and how he feels about what happened at home. Think about these things and make notes:
  - Paragraph 1: Describe the journey.
  - Paragraph 2: Describe the school (rooms, food, Steerforth, other boys, teachers, rules).
  - Paragraph 3: Say how he feels about the incident and the Murdstones.

#### WRITE

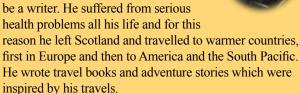
10 Now write the letter. Use your notes and remember to start and end the letter appropriately.



## **Reading** A short gothic novel

- 1 You are going to read part of a short novel by the Scottish writer Robert Louis Stevenson. Read the information and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where was Robert Louis Stevenson born?
  - 2 Why did he choose to travel a lot?
  - 3 Which famous characters did he create?
  - 4 Which of his novels have been made into films? Have you seen any of these films? What is your opinion about them?
  - 5 Think of your favourite novel(s) or film(s). What are their themes? How are they developed? Why are they important?
  - 6 Do you know of any gothic novels in English or in Romanian? Give examples.
- 2 The main character in *The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, Dr Jekyll, hasn't been seen for a few weeks. He's in his laboratory and his servant, Poole, is worried. He asks Mr Utterson, an old friend of Dr Jekyll, to come to Dr Jekyll's house. Read the text quickly and answer the questions. Give reasons and examples from the text.
  - 1 How do you think the man died? Why?
  - 2 What does Poole mean by 'This mirror has seen some strange things'?

Robert Louis Stevenson (1850-1894) was born in Edinburgh, Scotland. His works include *Treasure Island* (1883), *Kidnapped* (1886) and *The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde* (1886). Stevenson studied law at university but he had always wanted to be a writer. He suffered from serious health problems all his life and for this



**Gothic novels** are stories that combine fiction, horror and sometimes romance. The plot is centred on supernatural happenings that are full of suspense and mystery. Gothic novels were very popular in Europe in the 18th and 19th centuries.

#### **Get reading**

A theme is the main idea or meaning of a work of literature. It is often described by a single word: love, conflict, betrayal, crime, etc. The reader understands the theme through the words and actions of the characters. The themes in *The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde* are: double life, science, deception and ignorance.



'Jekyll,' shouted Mr Utterson through the closed door, 'I want to see you!'

He waited a moment but there was no reply.

'Utterson,' said a voice, 'No, no, you mustn't enter!'

'That's not Jekyll's voice – it's Hyde's,' said Utterson. 'We must break down the door, Poole.'

When they finally managed to enter, they stood and looked round the laboratory: it looked like an ordinary room, except for the bottles of \*chemicals. And then ... they saw the body of a man lying in the middle of the room. Utterson and Poole walked over to it - it was

Edward Hyde. He was wearing clothes that were much too big for him – clothes that were Dr Jekyll's size. In his hand, he held a glass bottle and there was a strong smell of chemicals in the room.

'We have arrived too late,' Utterson said. 'Hyde is dead. Now we have to find Dr Jekyll.'

They searched the house from top to bottom but they could find no \*trace of him.

'He must have run away,' said Utterson.

'This is a mystery. Let's go back to the laboratory.'

They \*proceeded to examine the contents of the laboratory. On one table, they found traces of a white chemical, like salt, which had been prepared for an experiment.

'That is the chemical he buys from the chemist's. I usually get it for him,' said Poole.

There was a big mirror in one corner. Poole looked in it and said slowly, 'This mirror has seen some strange things.' 'But what I don't understand is why Dr Jekyll needed a mirror in his laboratory,' said Utterson.

- \*chemical a substance that is used in chemistry or produced by chemistry
- \*trace proof that someone or something was in a place
- \*proceed to do something after you have done something else
- \*examine to look at someone or something very carefully, especially to try to discover something

#### 3 What do you think happens next? Read the next part of the text to find out.

Next they turned their attention to the desk. Among the papers and books, Utterson noticed an \*envelope. It had his name on it in Dr Jekyll's handwriting. He opened the envelope and took out the documents. One of them was Dr Jekyll's \*will

'I just don't understand it! He must have been here today. Look at this document, it's got today's date on it!' said Mr Utterson.

'There's a letter in the envelope too. Why don't you read it, sir?' said Poole.

'My dear Utterson, When you read this, I won't be here. I have a \*feeling that the end is near. Read the letter from Dr Lanyon and if you want to know more, read my \*confession. Your unhappy friend, Henry Jekyll.'

'Is there anything else in the envelope?' asked Utterson.

'Here sir,' said Poole and gave him a thick packet. Mr Utterson put it in his pocket. 'Don't say anything about these documents. It's ten o'clock now. I must go home and read them in peace. I'll come back before midnight and then we'll call the police.'

\*envelope flat paper container for a letter

\*will a piece of paper that says who will get your money, house and things when you die

\*feeling an idea that something is true or exists

\*confession a statement someone makes to say that they have done something wrong

## 4 Read the whole text again. Write the questions for the following answers.

- 1 Because Dr Jekyll refused to open it.
- 2 The body of a man who was wearing clothes that were too big for him.
- 3 They don't know. They think he must have escaped.
- 4 They don't know why there is a mirror in the laboratory.
- **5** Because they find a document written by Dr Jekyll with that day's date on it.
- 6 Mr Utterson takes the documents home so that he can read them.

## 5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Use the correct form.

confession trace marks proceed to feeling chemicals

- 1 The smallest .... of arsenic can kill you.
- 2 After discovering electromagnetic induction, Faraday .... give Chemistry lectures.
- 3 Although some people say they have a .... that something bad will happen, other people look for evidence that something is wrong.
- 4 I have a .... to make I've lost that book you lent me.
- 5 The man was careful not to leave any .... behind him when he committed the crime.
- 6 Aluminium, Zinc and Calcium are all .... which were discovered in the 19th century.



6 Choose five words in the text that are new to you. Look them up in a dictionary and then write each of them in a sentence.

### Your turn

7 Work in pairs. Utterson and Poole have just broken down the door. Student A is Utterson, student B is Poole. Read the beginning of the conversation and then continue it with your own ideas. Say what you can see, hear and smell.

Utterson: Careful! It's very dark in here. It smells,

doesn't it?

**Poole:** Yes. Look at the floor. It's disgusting.

8 Listen to the next part of the story. Put the words in the order you hear them. There are two more words than you need.

a glass
b notebook
c experience
d experiments
e potion
f poison
g visitor
h terrified

I collected a notebook and two <sup>1</sup>.... from Dr Jekyll's laboratory. The visitor arrived at <sup>2</sup>..... He was <sup>3</sup>.... and had an evil face. I thought he might be Mr <sup>4</sup>..... He immediately mixed a <sup>5</sup>.... and then drank it. His body started to get <sup>6</sup>.... and his face <sup>7</sup>..... I was <sup>8</sup>.....





## Get writing – Portfolio

#### PLAN

- 10 Imagine the scene after Mr Hyde has turned back into Dr Jekyll. Write a dialogue between Dr Lanyon and Dr Jekyll as Dr Jekyll tries to explain his transformation. Follow these tips and make notes:
  - Start a new line for each new speaker.
  - Use quotation marks around the dialogue and begin each spoken sentence with a capital letter.
  - Put question marks or commas inside the quotation marks (e.g. 'Is there anything else in the envelope?' asked Utterson).
  - Include descriptions of the scene and other characters' reactions.
  - Read your dialogue aloud to check it sounds natural.

#### WRITE

11 Write the dialogue between the two characters using your notes.
When you have finished your writing, read it again. Check your spelling, grammar and punctuation.



# Holidays in my community





## **Guy Fawkes Night**

1 Read the first two lines of a traditional rhyme that children in the United Kingdom learn at an early age. Work with a partner and try to answer the questions below. Compare your ideas with the rest of the class.

Remember, remember, the Fifth of November. Gunpowder, treason and plot. I see no reason why gunpowder treason Should ever be forgot.

- 1 Have you heard this poem before? Where?
- 2 What happened on the 5th of November?
- **3** What do you think made this day so important that it should be remembered?
- 2 Read the text and then decide if the sentences below are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.
  - 1 Guy Fawkes is a fictional character.
  - 2 There were thirteen people in the plotters' group.
  - 3 The purpose of the plot was to kill the king.
  - 4 King James received an anonymous letter about the Gun Powder Plot.
  - 5 Guy Fawkes was caught after the explosion.
  - 6 Bonfire Night lost its religious meaning.

Bonfire Night dates back to the 17th century and is strongly connected to a real-life character – Guy Fawkes. He was a former soldier from York, in the north of England, who supported the reinstatement of the Catholic Church in Britain. Britain had become a Protestant country 73 years before and Catholicism had been forbidden. So together with a group of twelve friends, Guy Fawkes plotted to kill the king, James I, who was a Protestant ruler.

The thirteen members of the plot decided the best way to carry out their plan was to blow up the House of Lords on its opening day, 5th November 1605. The King and all members of Parliament were expected to attend the

ceremony. The plotters placed no less than 36 barrels of gunpowder in the basement of the Houses of Parliament with the intention of causing a big explosion. As an experienced soldier, Guy Fawkes knew his way around firearms, so he was left to guard the gunpowder on the night before the explosion.

However, an anonymous letter was sent to a member of the House of Lords and the plot was uncovered. Guy Fawkes was caught on the night of 4th November and tried for treason.

The failure of the plot was later turned into a celebration which lost most of its religious connection. Today it is mostly a night for people to have fun outdoors with friends and neighbours, and light bonfires. An effigy of Guy Fawkes is usually burned on the bonfires.

**FACT!** Bonfire toffee is a very hard, brittle and very bitter treat. There is no clear connection between the Bonfire Night holiday and the toffee, apart from the fact that its main ingredient, molasses, was first used in the UK in the 1660s. Bonfire toffee is a favourite especially with the people in the north of England, where Guy Fawkes was born.

3 a Now listen to the whole rhyme and complete the missing words.

Remember, remember, the ... of November.
Gunpowder ... and plot.
I see no reason why gunpowder treason
Should ... be forgot.
Guy Fawkes, Guy Fawkes, 'twas his intent
To ... the King and the Parliament.
Three score ... of powder below
Poor old England to ....
By God's providence he was catch'd
With a dark ... and burning match.
Holler boys, holler boys, let the ... ring
Holler boys, holler boys, God save the King!

- b Search on the internet to find videos of how Guy Fawkes Night is celebrated in other English-speaking countries. Present your findings to the class.
- 4 Bonfire celebrations are common to many cultures. Write a short presentation of a Romanian holiday closely associated with bonfires. Include details about:
  - when it is celebrated;
  - its significance;
  - its history;
  - specific related traditions or customs;
  - types of food associated with this holiday.

Your presentation should be 100-120 words long. You can use photos or short videos to make it more attractive.



The image of Guy Fawkes and the Gunpowder Plot have been a source of inspiration for artists. One of the most famous examples is Alan Moore's graphic novel 'V for Vendetta'. Can you think of other examples?





## **Biology** Global warming

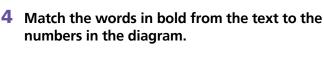
- 1 Work with a partner. Answer the questions about the greenhouse effect.
  - 1 What is the 'greenhouse effect'?
  - 2 Which gases cause the greenhouse effect?
  - 3 What is a greenhouse?
  - 4 How does a greenhouse work?
- 2 Read the texts (a–d) and match them with the questions in Exercise 1.

A greenhouse is a structure made of glass or plastic. Farmers and gardeners use them for growing plants in.

A greenhouse changes sunlight into heat. The Sun's radiation goes through the glass or plastic walls and roof as light. This heats up the air, then the walls and roof keep the heat inside.

When we talk about the greenhouse effect, we mean the planet is working like a greenhouse. The Sun's radiation enters the Earth's atmosphere and heats up the Earth's surface. Thermal, infra-red radiation comes from the Earth's surface, but gases in the atmosphere don't allow it all to escape. In fact, they reflect it back at the Earth like the walls and roof of a greenhouse. This causes what scientists call 'global warming'.

Different gases cause the greenhouse effect. The most common are water vapour, carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>), methane, nitrous oxide and ozone. All of these gases exist naturally in our environment. Without them, the Earth would be too cold to support life — but too much of them can make temperatures rise. In fact, nowadays, the average global surface temperature is almost a degree higher than it was a hundred years ago.



- Work with a partner. What problems does global warming cause? Make a list.
- 6 Read the information and check your answers from Exercise 5.

Higher temperatures are changing our environment. The polar ice caps are melting and causing sea levels to rise. This produces floods in coastal areas and also affects ecosystems in the world's oceans and seas. It can cause extreme weather conditions too – violent storms and hurricanes, for example. And it doesn't stop there. The higher temperatures make water evaporate from the land more quickly. This causes water loss and can turn good land into deserts. This desertification makes land more difficult to farm and, of course, affects wildlife.

### Your turn

1

7 Work with a partner. Make a list of things you can do at home to reduce the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> you produce. Then compare your list with another pair.

2

Learn about the greenhouse effect.Why is the Earth getting hotter?What happens to the oceans?What happens to the water?







## **Geography** Living in a global city

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos. Which cities are they? Make a list of the advantages of living in a city.
- 2 Read the information about cities. Are any of your ideas from Exercise 1 mentioned?



A city is a large, densely populated area with a high concentration of buildings and an infrastructure of services and facilities. Unlike rural areas, the majority of economic activities in cities is in manufacturing or services, like public administration, transport, health care and entertainment.

Cities can be classified in different ways. We can call them global, governmental, industrial or tourist, according to their main activity. Global cities usually combine aspects of all types, but their main importance is in the global economy.

As well as being important world economic centres, most global cities share various features. They usually have large cosmopolitan populations; they have the headquarters of multinational companies and they have cultural centres with important museums, art galleries and universities. Global cities usually have advanced public transport systems and a major airport. In general, global cities have an active influence on world events.

3 Read the information again and complete the following summary.

The economies of most cities are based on <sup>1</sup>manufacturing and <sup>2</sup>.... Services include public administration, health care, <sup>3</sup>.... and <sup>4</sup>....

Global cities are important world 5....centres. They have large 6.... populations. 7.... have their headquarters there. They are cultural centres with 8..., art galleries and 9....

### Your turn

5 Work with a partner. One of you look at Photo 1, the other at Photo 2. Make a list of the advantages of living in this place.





6 Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of living in the place from your photo.

#### Learn about Russian cities.

- What advantages are there for living in the countryside?
- How many people live in Moscow?
- What are people proud of in St Petersburg?







## **Technology Social media**

- 1 Work with a partner. Answer the questions.
  - 1 What social media sites do you use?
  - 2 In what ways can social media be useful for teenagers?
- 2 Read the information about teenagers and social media. Check your ideas from Exercise 1.



social media 🗸

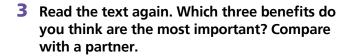
Dhone (

email >

## Using Social media can be a good thing.

Social media sites and networking can:

- improve communication between teenagers and their teachers, because they are available at all times from almost anywhere.
- encourage teenagers to interact with each other, share ideas and be creative by letting people communicate in different ways.
- help develop relationships with real people. They can help shy teenagers find friends who follow the same singers, sports stars and so on and feel part of a group.
- expose teenagers to different viewpoints and new ideas through a wide variety of online communities.
- help teenagers get better at analysing and selecting important information.
   There's a lot of information on social media pages, so users become good at finding key information quickly.
- help familiarise students with new technologies. Social media sites are constantly changing – to stay up to date, teenagers have to learn new ways of using them.
- help students enter the world of work. Professional networking sites like
   LinkedIn™ can help people find out about different professions and job offers.



# 4 Listen to three teenagers on a radio phone-in. Match the speakers to the social media they talk about.

John Sarah Mark

- a can organise images and create collections on Pinterest
- **b** likes Myspace because it's good for sharing music.
- c uses Facebook to exchange messages and photos.
- **d** likes X because messages are short.



- 5 Ask and answer the questions with your partner.
  - 1 What's your favourite social media site?
  - 2 What do you like about it?
  - 3 Is there anything you don't like about it?

#### Learn about being safe online.

- How can you be sure who you are talking to online?
- What does a criminal need to get a credit card?
- What should you do with messages from people you don't know?





Be safe online



### **Chemistry** Renewable energy

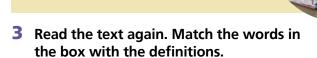
- 1 P Work with a partner. Look at the photos. How many sources of renewable energy can you think of?
- Read the information about sources of energy. Check your answers from Exercise 1.

At the moment we get about 70% of our energy from fossil fuels like oil, coal and natural gas, but there are two main problems with this. Firstly, they release CO<sub>2</sub> when we burn them and secondly, they take millions of years to form and the supply is limited.

Fossil fuels are not the only sources of energy. Alternative energy is energy generated from any source other than 'traditional' fossil fuels and which doesn't damage our environment. The Sun (solar energy), wind (eolic energy), water (hydroelectric energy) and tides and waves (tidal and wave power) are all alternative energy sources. They are also called renewable energy because they won't run out or sustainable energy because we can use it now without affecting the supply in the future.

There are other sources of energy such as biofuel and nuclear power, but these are not strictly alternative energy sources. Biofuel is a term that includes a wide variety of fuels obtained from biomass (carbon-based biological material, usually plants), so it releases CO<sub>2</sub> in the same way as fossil fuels. Nuclear power doesn't produce CO<sub>2</sub>, but it does produce waste which can stay toxic for 240,000 years.

Climate change and global warming, together with high oil prices and the risk of nuclear contamination, are making renewable energy sources more attractive. The production of alternative energy is growing very rapidly. It is estimated that 16% of all energy now comes from renewable resources.



sustainable energy renewable energy alternative energy fossil fuels biofuel

- 1 .... comes from sources that do not damage the environment.
- 2 comes from sources that do not run out.
- 3 .... gives us energy without affecting the supply in the future.
- 4 .... comes from material like plants.
- .... are formed over millions of years from the remains of plants and animals.

- 4 Work with a partner. Answer the quiz questions about energy sources.
  - How much of the energy used by TVs is used while they're on standby?

A 10%

c 60%

B 35%

D 85%

How long can a game console run for if you recycle one aluminium can?

A 30 minutes

c 2 hours

B 1 hour

- D 10 hours
- Biodiesel is a kind of biofuel used in diesel engines. Which of these things CAN'T it be made from?

A coconuts

c potatoes

**B** used cooking oil

- sunflower seeds
- 4 How much of the world's electricity does the Sun provide every 15 minutes?
  - A Enough for three years. C Enough for a day.
  - **B** Enough for a year.
- D Enough for a month.
- Listen and check.

### Your turn

- 6 Work with a partner. Make a poster to encourage students in your school to recycle and save energy. Follow the steps below.
  - Decide together what information to put on your poster.
  - Find photos and pictures to illustrate the information.
  - Present your poster to your class.
  - Vote on the class's favourite poster.

#### Learn about electric cars.

- Which countries are producing electric cars?
- What is Kevin's goal?
- Where are car batteries made?







## **Social Science** The history of jeans

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photo and the fact. Answer the questions.
  - 1 Why do you think jeans are so popular?
  - 2 How many pairs of jeans do you own?
  - 3 In your family, who wears jeans and who doesn't? When do they wear them?
- 2 Read the study notes about jeans in the 20th century. Which fact(s) do you find most surprising?

1900 Jeans were the ideal clothes for low-paid cowboys and miners in the American West, where conditions were hard. Jeans were cheaper and lasted longer than other trousers. This was important for poor, hard-working men.



Ken Maynard
FARGO EXPRESS

1920s

Hollywood films turned cowboys into heroes. Hollywood gave life in the American West a more attractive image. Middle-class Americans wanted to copy what they saw in the films.

1950s Film stars such as Marlon

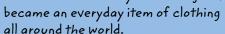
Brando and James Dean wore jeans on screen and set the fashion for teenagers. Teenagers wanted to show they were different from their parents and they used jeans to do this. Jeans turned into such a strong symbol of rebellion that some schools, cinemas and restaurants



banned them.

1960s Hippies wore jeans to show they were the same as the working classes and also to break racial barriers. Hippies wanted all people to be equal.

1970s Better transport routes between countries meant that jeans were manufactured cheaply and prices fell. More people could afford to buy them and jeans







- 1 Why were jeans the perfect clothes for difficult working conditions?
- 2 How did Hollywood first help to make jeans popular?
- 3 Why did teenagers copy the style of film stars?
- 4 What did hippies hope to achieve by wearing jeans?
- 5 What happened to the price of jeans when international transport became easier?
- Work with a partner. Do you remember what they said about each of the following areas? Listen again and check your answers.
  - The economy
- Class
- The film industry
- The environment
- The roles of men and women

#### Your turn

6 Work with a partner. Choose an item which you think reflects the 20<sup>th</sup> century and use it to help you talk about social changes. Use the areas in Exercise 5 to help you.







#### Learn about young trendsetters.

- What do companies want to know about the two trendsetters, Saeko and Yuko?
- What new product are the girls trying out?What do they like about the new product?





**Trendsetters** 



## **Technology** Passive houses

- 1 Work with a partner and answer the questions.
  - 1 How do you keep your house warm in winter?
  - 2 Do you use air conditioning in summer?
  - 3 Is your house south- or north-facing? What difference does this make?
- Read the article about passive houses. Are they designed for hot climates, cold climates or both?

Passive homes are special houses which use the sun's heat to warm up the building and fresh air to cool it.

Passive houses usually have very large windows. In fact, in cooler climates whole walls can be made of glass so that lots of sunlight shines into the house and warms it. The windows must be very good quality so that cold air does not enter the house through the windows and warm air does not escape.

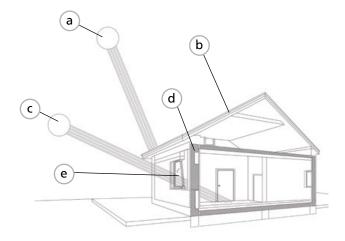
Architects have to design the houses so the air heated by the sun during the day stays inside the house and keeps it warm at night. They are built with thick walls to stop the heat escaping. The direction the building faces is also important. The large windows are usually south-facing so that the sunlight can enter all the way into the house and make the house warm.

Houses in climates with hot summers normally have low roofs to stop the strong, summer sun shining directly into the house and making it too hot. This is possible because in summer the sun is much higher in the sky than in winter. In winter the sun is low in the sky, so the low roofs and porches do not prevent the sun from shining into the house. Thick walls work in the opposite way in hot climates and stop the outside heat from entering into the house.



3 Complete the diagram of a passive house with the words in the box.

winter sun summer sun low roof thick walls good quality windows



- 4 Listen to two friends talking about their holidays. Which house sounds more comfortable to stay in?
- 5 Listen again and copy and complete the table.

	Passive house	Grandmother's house
Heating	1	central heating
Temperature	always warm	2
Windows	3	small
Light	4 and	dark
Furniture	little	5

### Your turn

Work with a partner. What changes could you make in your own home or school to make it more environmentally friendly?

Learn about what we throw away.

- What is e-waste?
- Where does e-waste normally get dumped?
- Name some good ways to reduce e-waste.







## **Biology Extinction**

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the photo and answer the questions.
  - 1 What is the bee doing?
  - 2 How is the bee helping the plant reproduce?



2 Read the article about the honeybee. Why are they dying?

Honeybees are essential to life on the planet. **Pollination** occurs when pollen is carried from one plant to another and honeybees are the world's most important **pollinators**. If bees die out, many plants will not get pollinated and that would mean many changes for humans too. Honeybees are in danger of **extinction**, so scientists are trying to find out what is causing so many to die.

One of the main problems for bees is that they do not have enough food. As more land is used for farming, roads and houses, there are fewer natural spaces for flowers to grow. Also, bees sleep all through the winter and because of global warming many plants have already finished flowering by the time the bees come out of **hibernation**. The bees die because they have less food but the plants also die as they depend on bees to pollinate them.

Disease is another killer for bees. Over the last 20 years, bee populations have been attacked by tiny eight-legged animals called Varroa **mites**. Bees often live in wooden boxes called hives; one **hive** can contain thousands of bees. If Varroa mites get into a hive, all the bees may die.

Chemicals used to stop insects damaging farmers' crops are killing bees too. Farms today are often very big, so these chemicals are used over very large areas and the bees cannot escape. In some parts of the world where farmers use lots of chemicals, there are no bees left and the farmers have to pollinate their plants by hand. The future for the honeybee really doesn't look bright.



- 3 Match the highlighted words in the article with the definitions.
  - 1 very small spider-like animals
  - 2 the process of a specific animal species stopping existing because they have all died
  - 3 a special box where bees live
  - 4 the process of moving pollen from one plant to another so that the plants can make seeds
  - 5 a period of time when animals sleep in winter
  - 6 an insect which moves pollen between plants
- 5 Listen to the conversation again. Copy and complete the bee fact file.



### Your turn

6 Work with a partner. Design a poster to inform people about the risk of extinction to bees. Include suggestions about what we might be able to do to help protect them.

Learn about looking after lions in Kenya.

- How many African lions are there today?
- What are the two reasons the lions are in danger?
- How many cows do the locals receive if a lion kills one of their cows?







## **ICT** Copyright

## 1 Work with a partner and answer the questions.

- 1 How often do you listen to music or watch films online?
- 2 Do you think CDs, DVDs, books and video games are expensive? Why/Why not?
- 2 Read the facts about copyright.

  Does copyright mean that a piece of work can never be copied?
- Copyright is the right of creators and owners of a piece
  of work to control how that work is used and shared.
  Music, photos, films, novels, artwork and software are
  all examples of material that is protected by copyright.
  It is against the law to copy or distribute anything that is
  protected under copyright law without the permission
  of the creator or owner.

## 3 Read the facts again. Are these sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 The aim of copyright law is to stop people copying work without the correct permission.
- 2 Only work with the copyright symbol © is protected by the copyright law.
- 3 It is legal to make a copy of a CD or video game and give it to a friend as long as they do not give you any money.
- 4 Someone who makes copies of CDs on their computer may have their computer taken away if they get caught.
- 5 A person who wants to make a comment about a film or a book is allowed to copy a small piece of the film or the book.

### Your turn

## 4 Work with a partner and answer the questions.

- 1 Have you ever seen someone recording a film in the cinema? What would you do if you did?
- 2 How do you think copying and selling CDs affects a band/group?
- 3 What would happen if you copied information from the internet for your homework? Would you get into trouble with your teacher?



- Copyright is automatic in most countries. In countries such as Spain, the UK and the USA work does not have to be registered to be protected by copyright.
   is the international symbol for copyright, but a piece of work without this symbol may still be protected under the copyright law.
- Copyright does not last forever. But laws are different in different countries and for different types of material.
   For example, in the UK the copyright on a book ends 70 years after the author dies, but for radio broadcasts copyright ends 50 years after the programme was first broadcast. In Australia the copyright on films and recordings runs out after 70 years. Copyright law prevents people from making, giving or selling copies.
- If a piece of work is created by an employee, the copyright normally belongs to the company, not the employee.
   People caught breaking copyright law often have to pay a large amount of money to the owner of the work. They may also lose any equipment they used to make the copies. In very serious cases people who break copyright law can even spend time in prison. In a famous case in the USA, artist Shepard Fairey was fined \$25,000 after he designed a poster using an image from a photo that was not his.
- 'Fair use' allows small sections of a piece of work to be used without the permission of the owner. People who want to give a professional opinion on a piece of work often use the fair use rule.



- Who can be an expert today according to the video presenter?
- Who does the presenter say are experts in manipulating images?
- How can we, the people who receive the information, control the messages we receive?





## A brief history of hotels A poster

In the 21st century hotels can be found everywhere, even in the most remote corners of the world. Hotels are great places for holiday accommodation, as stopovers for long-distance travellers or even as event or party venues. They offer comfort and make our lives easier.

Yet, hotels as we know them today are very different from what they used to be in the past. When they first appeared in ancient times, hotels were mainly useful to traders. In the Middle Ages, when the popularity of monasteries and abbeys increased, more people took to travelling on pilgrimages to the sacred sites. Hotels were called 'inns' and although they provided a much needed resting place after exhausting journeys in carts, coaches or on horseback, they offered small rooms, usually for share. It was not uncommon to share a bed if the time was particularly busy! As for bathrooms and toilets .... better not think of them! There was obviously no room service and the choice of food was also limited to what the wife of the inn-keeper could cook on a particular day.

It wasn't until the 19th century that hotels began to look how they do today, due to the growing number of rich travellers who had higher demands.

One of the oldest hotels in London is the George Inn or simply the 'George', most probably established during the Middle Ages, in the borough of Southwark. The George is the only surviving galleried London inn. There is no longer a hotel today – it has been converted into a pub. The ground floor is still in use. While you enjoy a cup of coffee in the Coffee Room, remember you're in great company: Charles Dickens was a regular there, and he even mentioned the George in one of his novels.







#### Look

#### 1 Read the text and mark the sentences true (T) or false (F).

- 1 Hotels can mainly be found in big cities.
- 2 Hotels today serve other purposes apart from accommodation.
- 3 In ancient times, hotels were mainly visited by pilgrims.
- 4 Inns in the Middle Ages didn't offer individual rooms.
- 5 There was a wide choice of dishes at a medieval inn.
- **6** The 19th century brought an increase in the number of pilgrim travellers.
- 7 The 'George' has galleries.
- 8 The 'George' now looks exactly like it used to.
- **9** Charles Dickens went to the 'George' quite often to drink coffee.



#### **Prepare**

Work in groups of three or four. You are going on a holiday to London this summer and one of the places you want to see is The George. However, when you get there something happens and two of you are transported back in time to the late 16th century. Luckily, you are eventually reunited with the rest of the group and you can now share your holiday experiences. Use the information in the text, then do some research using books, travel guides and the internet to find information about:



'Priory of St. Mary Overy, 1700', (c. 1878). St Mary Overie was the ancient priory church which became known as St Saviour's Church and is now Southwark Cathedral, on the south side of the River Thames near London Bridge.

- how you moved around Southwark;
- what the buildings looked like;
- your accommodation;
- any interesting food you tried;
- entertainment in or around Southwark and 'The George' (tip: find out what the galleries of the inn were used for in the 16th century);
- famous people you ran into in the area;
- any new friends you may have made on this holiday.



Southwark Cathedral and the Shard building today

#### **Present**

- 3 a Make a poster named London Then and Now and present it to the rest of the class. Use your notes in Exercise 2 to help you. Which poster is the class's favourite?
  - b Role-play: in your groups, one/two of you is/are inhabitants of the 16th century Southwark. You have travelled to the future. You can't recognise the area, so you ask questions. The rest of the group will have to answer, giving explanations about the changes that the area went through. The class will vote for the most convincing performances.

#### **Skills:**

- ability to work in a team
- presentation skills
- communication skills
- boost in self-confidence

#### Check your results!

- identify the topic of the project based on the given prompts and pictures
- search for information about the given topic
- search for pictures
- combine the pictures and information in the required project format
- make a poster
- present your poster to the class and test your classmates' ability to recognise specific aspects based on a visual support □
- be creative □

G – good VG – very good

E – excellent

## **A presentation**

#### A truly scary story with a happy ending

The word *phobia* comes from Greek and it refers to a great fear of something. As the story goes, in the ancient Greek mythology there were two twin brothers – Phobos, who was the personification of panic, and Deimos, who was the god of terror. We recognise the connection between fear and panic here: when something causes fear, people panic. That is exactly how phobias manifest themselves – fear and panic are as closely connected as twins.

Many people throughout the world suffer from some kind of phobia. One of the most common is arachnophobia, which is the fear of spiders. Some phobias are quite unexpected, like the one referring to clowns, which apparently affects quite a few people, including some celebrities.

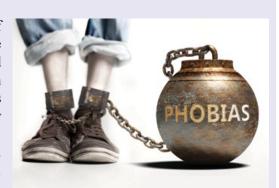
According to scientists, phobias are not something people are born with, but they are acquired during their lifetime following certain events that cause their brain to 'learn' to panic when confronted with the object of fear. Phobias start a chain of strong emotions in the person affected and the first

indicators of these emotions are their body language and facial expressions. In some cases, living with phobias is a truly difficult thing and the lives of people affected are seriously disrupted.

But there is an example that people with phobias can learn from – Catalan painter Salvador Dalí. Although famous and very successful as an adult, young Salvador was a shy child, constantly bullied by his schoolmates. One of their favourite bullying methods was to throw grasshoppers at him, which caused Dalí to develop an acute fear of insects.

However, as a grown-up, Dalí realised that the best way to cope with his fear was to admit it and speak about it in the best way he could – his art. Some of his paintings show a variety of huge or small insects, and specialists say this was a great way for the painter to take charge of his phobia instead of letting it control him.









#### Look

- a Read the presentation and look at the painting by Salvador Dalí. Work in pairs and try to interpret the message the artist wants to convey. Make notes paying attention to:
  - the half-open drawer;
  - the lion next to the woman;
  - the people fighting in the woman's head.
  - b How could this painting be connected to phobias?

2 In pairs, research tell-tale signs of common emotions and behaviours. For example, a false/sincere smile, boredom, fear, distrust, fury, surprise, disgust and lying. Mime each emotion/behaviour for the rest of the class to guess. Then take a class vote to find the most convincing.

#### **Prepare**

- 3 a Work in groups of three or four. Research on the internet the medical term for the following types of fear:
  - the fear of flying;
  - the fear of heights;
  - the fear of birds;
  - the fear of open spaces;
  - the fear of bees.

Do you know any other phobias that you can add to this list?

- b Ask around the class and find out what the three most common fears are among your classmates. How do they react when confronted with the object of their fear?
- 4 Choose one of the phobias in Exercise 3. Prepare a display of slides on what this phobia means and how it affects people. Research on the internet to discover:
  - 1 how it manifests.
  - 2 how people usually react when they suffer from this phobia.
  - 3 stories of one or two famous people who suffered or suffer from this phobia.
  - 4 pictures to illustrate your findings.

#### **Present**

5 Present your display to the class. Remember, you should give most of the information in your speech. You only need pictures and main points on the slides.

#### **Skills:**

- ability to work in a team
- presentation skills
- communication skills
- boost in self-confidence

#### Check your results!

- identify the topic of the project based on the prompts and pictures given
- search for pictures
- search for information about the given topic
- write a presentation
- combine the pictures and information in the required project format
- show the presentation to the class and test your classmates' ability to recognise specific aspects based on a visual support

G – good

VG – very good

E – excellent

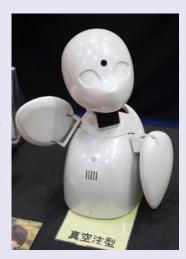
### My ideal school system

## Debating the pros and cons of AI with students

#### **Robots in school?**

OriHime is a humanoid robot that was created to help sick children to attend classes and to communicate with both their teachers and classmates from home or even from hospital. It works as an avatar of the child who is not present, connecting them with the classroom through a smartphone or a tablet. Even though it was originally used in schools, OriHime can also fight loneliness in several other situations. For example, students who study abroad can take part in family life at a distance thanks to this new robot.

OriHime was completed in 2015 by its Japanese inventor, Kentaro Yoshifuji, co-founder and CEO of Ory Laboratory. 'Ori' used to be Yoshifuji's nickname as a child, because he was very good at *origami*, the Japanese art of paper folding. In his teenage years, Yoshifuji was not able to go to school for a long period of time due to serious health issues. He felt very lonely and depressed, and being isolated from people made him shy and distrustful. He thought about the possibility of having two bodies at the same time, one of which could attend classes, while the other was at home, recovering. Kentaro eventually went back to school, decided to study artificial intelligence (AI) and came up with the idea of developing



a special robot, finding motivation in his own painful experience. For him, the most important aspect in developing this robot was supporting human to human connections, rather than creating a bond between humans and robots.



OriHime is approximately 20 centimetres tall and has a torso, head and arms. Although its face shows no expression at all, being inspired by the traditional *Noh* masks used in an ancient form of Japanese theatre, the robot can actually react and exhibit an emotional side by turning sideways or waving. It works both as an avatar of the student, enabling the controller to take part in the classroom activities in real time, and a transmitter of what is happening during lessons, via a speaker and a camera. Hiroshima University Hospital has recently used this system of *technology-driven educational assistance*, in order to allow hospitalised students to take part in classes remotely, without the teachers' supervision. Doctors were surprised to discover that communicating with the help of this robot cheered patients up and made their recovery easier.

#### Look

- 1 Read the text carefully and answer the questions.
  - 1 How can OriHime work as an avatar?
  - **2** What is the robot's role in fighting loneliness?
  - 3 What do you think about using this system for exams, when students are in hospital?
  - 4 How can artificial intelligence be used in an ideal school?

#### **Prepare**

- 2 Imagine you are a student in hospital, who is not able to attend classes. Answer the following questions and make notes.
  - What would you do if you could use OriHime avatar?
  - How would you feel?
  - What would you ask your classmates?
  - What would you say to your teacher?
- 3 In groups, role-play an OriHime classroom activity. Use a toy as a robot to communicate with the absent student.

4 Think about using robots like OriHime in an ideal school of the future. Now make a list of pros and cons about using robots or other forms of artificial intelligence in education. Do some research on the internet and add pictures and examples to the list. Display the results on a screen.





#### **Present**

5 a Organise a classroom debate based on the arguments on your list. You can divide the class into two teams: For and Against. Add the new arguments that you come up with during the debate. Use the phrases in the *Useful language* box.

#### Useful language

I agree / I (strongly) disagree with ...
I am in favour of ... I am totally against ...
On the one hand ..., On the other hand ...
It is important to mention that ...
I am most concerned about ...
All in all, I believe that ...
To sum up, it can be said that ...
Weighing the pros and cons, I come to the conclusion that ...

b Write down the conclusions based on the pros and cons identified, and make a poster for your classroom or post them on your classroom blog.

#### **Skills:**

- ability to work in a teampublic
  - public speaking skills
- debate skills
- communication skills

#### Check your results!

- express advantages and disadvantages
- search for information on artificial intelligence
- give arguments for or against a situation
- express hypothetical situations
- combine pictures and information in the required project format
- draw conclusions based on pros and cons
- be creative □

G – good VG – very good E – excellent



### An information leaflet



Lego is a company that makes small, plastic building blocks for children. They put the pieces together to make cars, aeroplanes, houses and cities. Well, this necklace was made with plastic Lego pieces. In the past they were used for making Lego houses, boats, planes and castles. Now you can wear them on your body as jewellery like earrings, necklaces and bracelets.

CGOD SYSIEM

3 ...

Jewellery is usually made from metal that is mined from the earth and this damages the environment. However, this jewellery is made with plastic from children's old toys. Plastic has a long life so if you don't reuse it, it will stay on a rubbish dump for the next four hundred years!

4

You don't have to spend money to be fashionable. Why not try to make some jewellery at home? Use old toys, household objects and some elastic. Be creative and you can make your own designs for much less money.

#### Look

1 Match the words in the box with the pictures.

bracelet earring jewellery necklace









- 2 Read the text. Match the questions with the paragraphs.
  - a What can you make?
  - **b** What is it made of?
  - c Why is it the best 'green' product?
  - **d** What is it?

#### **Prepare**

- 3 Work in groups of three or four. Use the internet to find examples of recycled products which have been made from things you can find in your home. Choose your favourite one and make notes about it. Use the questions in Exercise 2 to help you.
- 4 Make an information leaflet on your favourite recycled product. Use photos or draw a picture of the product and the information in Exercise 3. Then think of a title which relates to the product and its use.







#### **Present**

5 Display the leaflet on the wall in your classroom. Ask your classmates to read it. Then test their memory using the questions in Exercise 2. Have a class vote to choose the best 'green' product.

#### **Skills:**

- ability to work in a team
- presentation skills
- communication skills
- boost in self-confidence

#### Check your results!

- identify the topic of the project based on the given prompts and pictures
- search for information about the given topic
- search for pictures
- ombine the pictures and information in the required project format
- make an information leaflet □
- present your leaflet to the class and test your classmates' ability to recognise specific aspects based on a visual support
- be creative

G – good

VG – very good

E – excellent

### **A survey**

#### Teens and social media

Think about the oldest member of your family who uses social media. Social media use is not restricted to young people – most generations are attracted to choosing the platform which is most appropriate for their interests and needs.

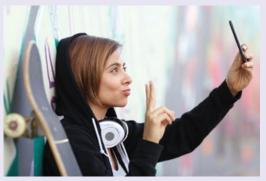
However, the first people who used such platforms were the Millennials or Generation Y, those born between 1980 and mid-1990s. They were the first to communicate through social media and set up social accounts. They were also the first to become aware of the risks involved in surfing the internet so they were considered the most responsible users of social platforms. Recent surveys have shown that most Millennials prefer Facebook to Instagram. They are inclined to post more text than pictures and check their online accounts several times a day.

Those born between 1996 and early 2000s are generally known as Generation Z or Gen Zers. They are often called digital natives, because they have been exposed to technology all their lives. Unlike Millennials, they use social media for more than communication. They look for entertainment and they tend to be less patient with sites that are slow to load. Gen Zers like Snapchat and Instagram, they watch a lot of videos on YouTube and most of them admit they cannot live without their smartphones. It seems that they are more attracted to visual content, which is why Facebook, with its text-based features, is becoming less popular among Gen Zers.

Social media habits differ not only from generation to generation, but also from one person to another. Despite the differences in the use of social platforms, people of different ages may have similar habits, depending on their personality or hobbies. One thing all generations have in common is their belief that sharing photos of your experiences is the fastest way to communicate, and that visual content can reach a larger number of users. However, let's not forget that the best way to share opinions and news about ourselves is still real life interaction.







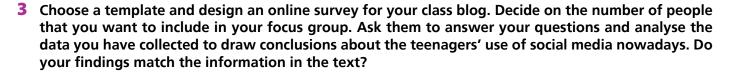
#### Look

#### 1 Read the text and then answer the questions.

- 1 According to the text, which age group do you belong to? What about you parents?
- 2 Do your mum and dad use social media?
- 3 Think of your parents' behaviour online. Do they follow the model described in the text? What about you?
- 4 Are you connected to your parents or grandparents on social media?
- 5 Do you and your parents have any common interests online? What do you share with each other?
- 6 Do you find it strange or uncomfortable to meet your parents or grandparents online?

#### **Prepare**

- 2 Work in groups of three. You are going to make a survey on the teenagers' use of social media. Decide on the questions to ask and write them down. Think about:
  - frequency of using social media;
  - favourite platforms;
  - reasons for choosing them;
  - content uploaded and shared;
  - groups;
  - proportion of text and image;
  - number of online friends;
  - difference between real-life friend and online friend:
  - social media for school;
  - favourite channels/blogs/vlogs.





- 4 a Present the conclusions of the survey to the class. In groups, decide on different ways of presenting the conclusions: PowerPoint, poster, blog post. Vote for the best option and choose a spokesperson to present it to the class.
  - b Once all groups have presented their conclusions, generate a class debate to compare your findings.

#### **Skills:**

- ability to work in a team
- presentation skills
- communication skills
- boost in self-confidence

#### Check your results!

- identify the topic of the project based on the prompts and pictures given
- search for information on how to make a survey
- search for information on the given topic
- make a survey, collect data and draw conclusions □
- combine pictures and information in the required project format
- present your conclusions to the class and get feedback from classmates
- generate a debate

G – good VG – very good E – excellent





### An advertisement



#### Look

- 1 Look at the advertisement above and answer the questions.
  - 1 What is the product name?
  - 2 What does the product do?
  - 3 Do you think this is a real product? Why?/Why not?
- 2 Read the advertisement again and answer the questions.
  - 1 How are the benefits of the product described?
  - 2 How many features are there?
  - 3 How are the features described?
  - 4 What other information is included?



#### **Prepare**

- **3** Work with a partner. Advertise an invention.
  - Search online for an invention that never became popular.
  - Find a picture or photo or draw your own picture.
  - Think of a name for the invention.
  - Write two sentences describing its benefits.
  - Write 6–8 features in notes, in a list.
  - Invent the name of a shop where it can be bought and a logo for your product.







#### **Present**

4 Display your advertisements around the classroom. Read your classmates' advertisements. Make a list of the top three inventions you would like to have.

#### **Skills:**

- ability to work in a team
- presentation skills
- communication skills
- boost in self-confidence

#### Check your results!

- identify the topic of the project based on the given prompts and pictures
- search for information about the given topic □
- search for pictures
- combine the pictures and information in the required project format
- make an advertisement
- present your advertisement to the class and test your classmates' ability to recognise specific aspects based on a visual support
- be creative

G – good VG – very good

E – excellent

## A film synopsis

date: 2<sup>nd</sup> August

# Dear diary...

Last night I saw an awesome film by Steven Spielberg - 'War Horse'. The story's really touching; the country landscapes and the war scenes are incredible! Actually, the screenplay is based on a children's book from 1982, by Michael Morpurgo.

War Horse is a story about a bay thoroughbred horse, which is bought at an auction in Devon, England, by farmer Ted Narracott. His wife is not happy about it, because the family is in trouble and in danger of losing their farm and so they need a working horse that can plough the field.

Their son, Albert, names the colt Joey and teaches him to come when he imitates an owl's call. Albert and Joey become good friends and the boy manages to plough a rocky field with the horse, so that his family can stay on the land and keep the farm. When World War I breaks out, farmer Ted sells Joey to the Army, and that makes Albert very sad. The boy promises to get Joey back one day.

I have a confession to make, dear diary: I fell asleep about mid-way through the film. I had a long day yesterday and I was very tired, but I'm planning to watch the rest of the film at the weekend. I can't wait to find out what happens next and if Albert gets Joey back!!



#### Look

1 Read the first part of a film synopsis from a teenager's diary. What do you think happens in the second part of the film? Does Albert get Joey back in the end? Work in pairs to write down the events that happen next.

2 Do some research on the internet to find out more information on Steven Spielberg's War Horse. Look for film sites and reviews and make notes about the following categories: the cast, awards, music, filming locations, the horses used on the set. In pairs, compare your notes.

#### **Prepare**

3 With a partner, make a list of films based on books. How many of these films have you seen? How many of the books have you read? Discuss what you should do first: read the book or watch the film.



- 4 a Choose a film that you liked most from the list in Exercise 3. Plan a one-page synopsis for your chosen film. Think about:
  - genre of the film;
  - characters;
  - story line;
  - actions;
  - emotions;

- ending;
- cast;
- production;
- trailer of the film.
- **b** Look for information on both the film and the book, production photos and reviews. Give arguments for your choice.
- Write the synopsis of a film, but make sure you do not include its name. Upload the synopsis on the class blog and see how many people can guess what film it refers to.



#### **Present**

6 In groups, present your synopsis to the rest of the class and play the trailer of the film.

Then ask them questions about what they've seen. Can they remember all the important facts?

Give your classmates three reasons why they should see the film you've chosen.

#### **Skills:**

- ability to work in a team
- research skills
- writing skills
- presentation skills

#### Check your results!

- identify the topic of the project based on the given prompts and pictures
- search for information about the given topic
- search for pictures
- combine the pictures and information in the required project format
- write a synopsis
- present your synopsis to the class and test your classmates' ability to recognise specific aspects based on a visual support □
- make recommendations
- express your opinion

G – good VG – very good E – excellent

## A comic strip



#### Look

- 1 Read the comic strip above. Choose the correct words.
  - 1 The crime illustrated in the comic strip is online theft / piracy.
  - **2** The warning is **simple / difficult** to understand.
  - 3 This comic strip will / won't teach young people about preventing online crime.
- 2 Choose do or don't to complete the sentences about writing a comic strip. Compare your answers with a partner.
  - 1 Do / Don't include more than six boxes.
  - 2 Do / Don't keep the pictures simple.
  - 3 Do / Don't try to make some of the pictures funny.
  - 4 Do / Don't include lots of text.

#### **Prepare**

- **3** Work with a partner. Think of a crime that might affect you.
  - Plan a comic strip to warn young people about this crime;
  - Draw six boxes and a rough sketch of the pictures;
  - Add the dialogue;
  - Make it funny if you can;
  - Show it to another pair to see if they understand the warning;
  - Draw it again neatly on A3 paper.









#### **Present**

4 Display your comic strip in your classroom. Ask your class to read it. Ask them if they understand the warning. Then discuss with the class how to prevent the crimes happening to you.

#### **Skills:**

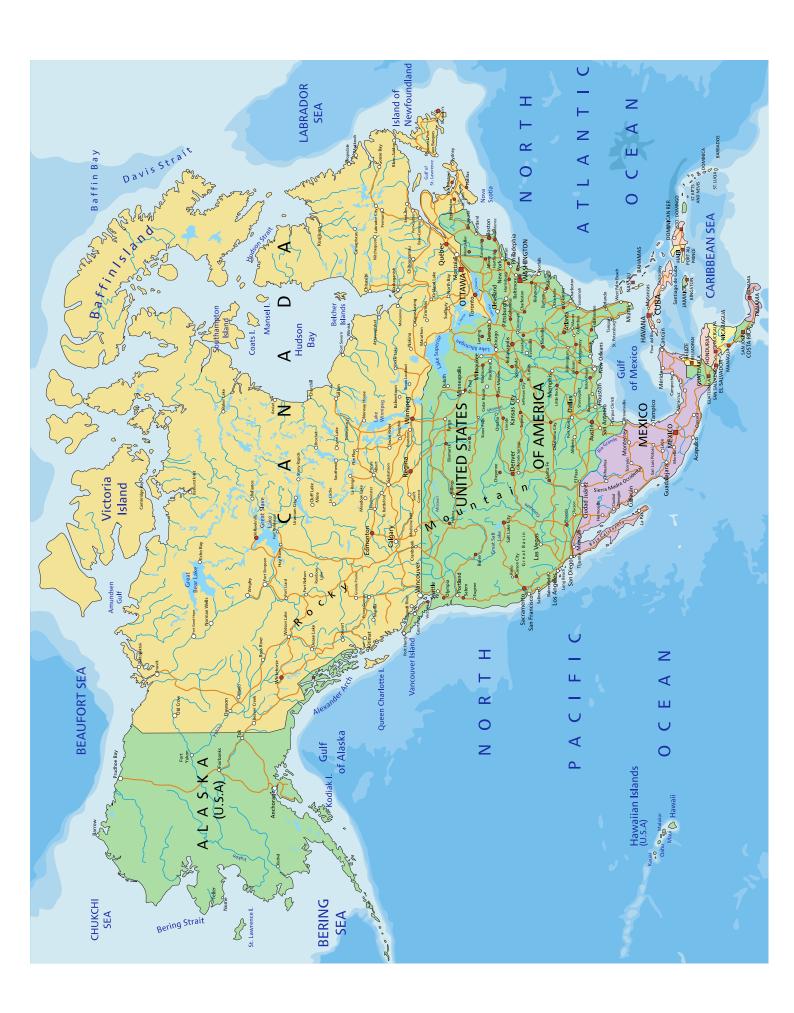
- ability to work in a team
- presentation skills
- communication skills
- boost in self-confidence

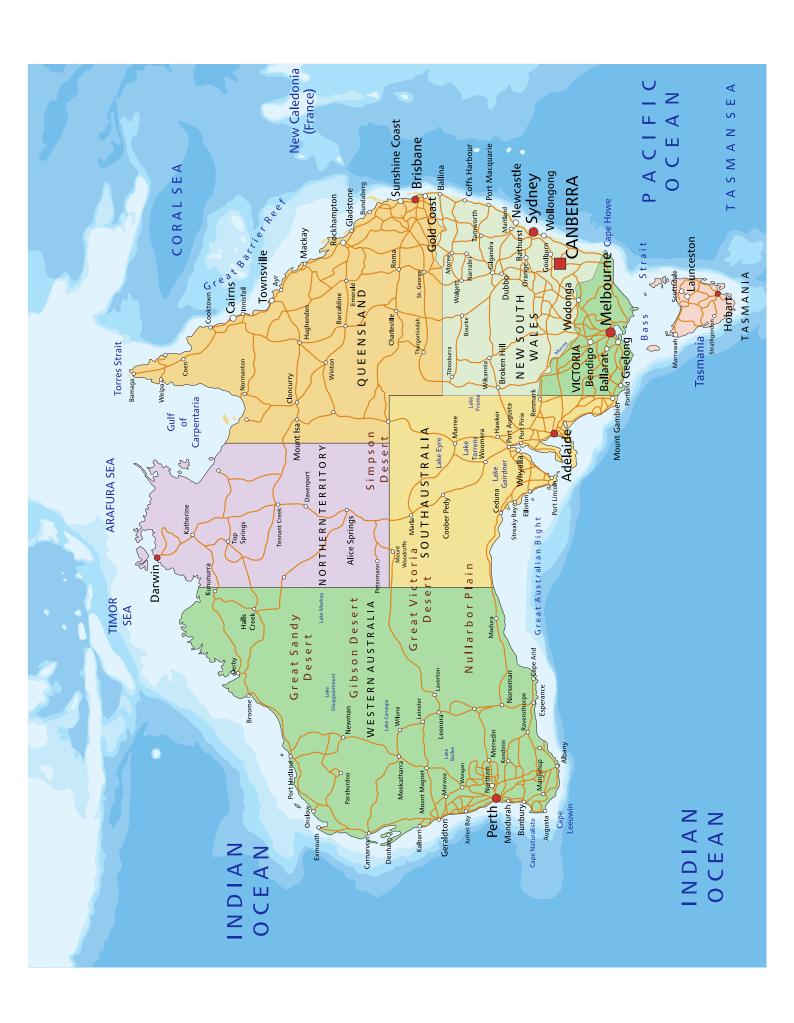
#### Check your results!

- identify the topic of the project based on the given prompts and pictures
- search for information about the given topic
- search for or draw pictures
- combine the pictures and information in the required project format
- make a comic strip
- present comic strip to the class and test your classmates' ability to recognise specific aspects based on a visual support
- be creative □

G – good VG – very good E – excellent







# **Irregular verbs**

infinitive	past simple	past participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
send	sent	sent
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

# **Phonemic symbols**

cons	onants	vowels
/p/	pencil	/i:/ see
/b/	<b>b</b> ag	/ɪ/ sit
/t/	town	/ʊ / book
/d/	day	/u:/ <b>zoo</b>
	cheese	/e / <b>pen</b>
	juice	/ə/ <b>teacher</b>
/k/	<b>c</b> ake	/3:/ <b>bird</b>
	get	/ɔ:/ boring
, ,	food	/æ/ that
/v/		/ʌ/ <b>ru</b> n
	Thursday	/a:/ <b>car</b>
	that _	/ɒ/ <b>lo</b> st
/s/	speak	
/s/ /z/	speak zebra	/p/ lost diphthongs
/s/ /z/ /ʃ/	speak zebra shoe	diphthongs
/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /3/	speak zebra shoe usually	diphthongs /eɪ/ say
/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /3/ /m/	speak zebra shoe usually mum	diphthongs /eɪ/ say /ɪə/ hear
/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /3/ /m/ /n/	speak zebra shoe usually mum name	diphthongs  /eɪ/ say /ɪə/ hear /ʊə/ pure
/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /3/ /m/ /n/ /ŋ/	speak zebra shoe usually mum name sing	diphthongs  /eɪ/ say /ɪə/ hear /ʊə/ pure /ɔɪ/ enjoy
/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /3/ /m/ /n/ /ŋ/ /h/	speak zebra shoe usually mum name sing house	diphthongs  /eɪ/ say /ɪə/ hear /ʊə/ pure /ɔɪ/ enjoy /əʊ/ know
/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /3/ /m/ /n/ /ŋ/ /h/	speak zebra shoe usually mum name sing house like	diphthongs  /eɪ/ say /ɪə/ hear /ʊə/ pure /ɔɪ/ enjoy /əʊ/ know /eə/ chair
/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /a/ /m/ /n/ /n/ /h/ /l/	speak zebra shoe usually mum name sing house like red	diphthongs  /eI/ say /Iə/ hear /və/ pure /oI/ enjoy /əʊ/ know /eə/ chair /aI/ buy
/s/ /z/ /ʃ/ /3/ /m/ /n/ /n/ /h/ /l/ /r/	speak zebra shoe usually mum name sing house like	diphthongs  /eɪ/ say /ɪə/ hear /ʊə/ pure /ɔɪ/ enjoy /əʊ/ know /eə/ chair

## Thanks and acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank all the teachers and consultants who have contributed to the development of this course, in particular

Argentina: Fernando Armesto; Natalia Bitar; Verónica Borrás; Leonor Corradi; Paz Moltrasio; Diana Ogando; Brazil: Dalmo Carvalho; Roberto Costa; Sônia M. B. Leites; Gloria Paz; Litany Pires Ribeiro; Christina Riego; Renata Condi de Souza; Elizabeth White; Chile: Magdalena Aldunate; M. Cristina Darraidou Diaz; Valentina Donoso; Ana María Páez Joffre? Ricardo Contreras Marambio; Claudia Ottone; Maria Elena Ramirez; Jacqueline Rondon; Alicia Paez Ubilla; Colombia: Luz Amparo Bautista; Sonia Ruiz Hernández; Sandra Jara; Fabian Jimenez; Bibiana Andrea Piñeros Merizalde; Lucero Amparo Bernal Nieto; Olga Olarte; Bibiana Piñeros, Emelis Rambut; Sonia Ruíz; Poland: Anna Bylicka; Russia: Natalya Melchenkova; Irina Polyakova; Svetlana Suchkova; Irina Vayserberg; Turkey: Ali Bilgin; Angela Çakır; Shirley Nuttal; Cinla Sezgin; Mujgan Yesiloglu

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders.

been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting. p. 9 (BR): Dreamstime/@Eremin Sergey; p. 10 (ex. 6 B/G): Dreamstime/@Vlad Neshte; p. 10 (BR): Dreamstime/@Vadymwdrobot; p. 11 (BR): © Andreus/Dreamstime; p. 12 (B/G): Horizons/ Ton Koene/akg-images/Profimedia; p. 13 (a): Shutterstock Images/Tom Wang; p. 13 (b): Shutterstock Images/fluke samed; p. 13 (c): Dreamstime/@Magicshapes; p. 13 (d): Dreamstime/@Antonio Guillem; p. 13 (e): Shutterstock Images/egd; p. 13 (f): Pixabay/ivabalk; p. 13 (g): Shutterstock Images/loumnova Irina; p. 13 (h): Shutterstock Images/Richard Whitcombe; p. 13 (i): Shutterstock Images/lounnova Irina; p. 13 (h): Shutterstock Images/Richard Whitcombe; p. 13 (i): Shutterstock Images/lames BO Insogna; p. 14 (B): Dreamstime/@ Whitcombe; p. 13 (i): Shutterstock Images/Igininova Inita, p. 13 (ii): Shutterstock Images/Igininova Inita, p. 13 (ii): Shutterstock Images/Igininova Inita, p. 14 (B): Dreamstime/© Dmitry Sedakov; p. 14 (BC): Amos Chapple/Shutterstock Editorial/Profimedia; p. 15 (C): Dreamstime/© Mykola Kravchenko; p. 16-17 (B/G): Dreamstime/©Photocomet; p. 18 (B/G T): Dreamstime/©Photography; p. 18 (CR): Dreamstime/@lessica Daie, p. 18 (Br). Dreamstime/evieuer intrography, p. 10 (Cr).

Dreamstime/@Rudi Santoso; p. 18 (TR): Alamy/@Trish Ainslie; p. 18-19 (B/G):

Dreamstime/@Agami Photo Agency; p. 20 (TR): Alamy/@Ellen Isaacs; p. 20 (BR):

Dreamstime/@ Rawpixelimages; p. 21 (TR): Dreamstime/@Jamen Percy; p. 21 (BR):

Shutterstock Images/Burro; p. 22 (B/G): Dreamstime/@Tixtis; p. 23 (B/G): Shutterstock Images/

Salajean; p. 23 (a): Pexels/@Emeric Laperriere; p. 23 (b): Shutterstock Images/Jayakumar; p. 23 (c): Shutterstock Images/Dmitrijs Bindemanis; p. 23 (d): Shutterstock Images/Matteo photos; p. 23 (e): Shutterstock Images/Lisa F. Young; p. 23 (f): Shutterstock Images/Jag\_cz; p. 24 (BC): Shutterstock Images/Sarah2; p. 24 (TC): Alamy/©Radius Images; p. 24 (C): Shutterstock Images/juniart; p. 24 (B): Alamy/@Image Source; p. 25 (BL): /Shutterstock Images/Sergei A. Aleshi; p. 26 (l): Dreamstime/@Dezzor; p. 26 (C): Dreamstime/@Tetiana Guzhva; p. 26 (R): Dreamstime/@Viavaltours; p. 27 (TL): Pexels/@Antonino Giangrasso; p. 28 (TR): Dreamstime/@Carriel313; p. 28 (BL): Dreamstime/@Lunamarina; p. 28 (B/G): Dreamstime/@Ulga; p. 29 (BL): Dreamstime/@Vladimir Polikarpov; p. 29 (CR): David Gee/ Alamy/Profimedia; p. 29 (CL): Shutterstock Images/Sergio Foto; p. 29 (TR): Dreamstime/@Serezniy; p. 29 (TL): Dreamstime/@David Ribeiro; p. 29 (BR): Shutterstock Images/Olga Selyutina; p. 29 (CT): Shutterstock Images/Erni; p. 30 (CL): Dreamstime/@Geoffsunnypicsoz; p. 30 (CR): Dreamstime/@Sergey Novikov; p. 30 (BR): Dreamstime/@Angelo Cordeschi; p. 31 (TL): Freepik/Whatsapp screen template; p. 31 (TR): Dreamstime/©Evgenii Fedorov; p. 32 (TR): Shutterstock Images/Blue Planet Studio; p. 34 (BR): Dreamstime/©Unquintu; p. 36 (B/G): Dreamstime/©Seventyfourimages; p. 37 (a): Dreamstime/©Syda Productions; p. 37 (b): Alamy/©Westend61 GmbH; p. 37 (c): Pexels/©Ron Lach; p. 37 (d): Pexels/©cottonbro studio; p. 37 (e): Shutterstock Images/BKMCphotography; p. 37 (f): Superstock/Image Source; p. 37 (g): Alamy/©Beyond Fotomedia GmbH; p. 37 (i): Getty Images/Silvia Otte/Taxi; p. 37 (f): Superstock/Image Source; p. 37 (h): Getty Infages/sin/a Otte/Taxi, p. 37 (I). Superstockninger Soutre, p. 37 (II). Alamy/@Wavebreakmedia Ltd UC1; p. 38-39 (B): Dreamstime/@Lacheev; p. 40 (BL): Dreamstime/@Seventyfourimages; p. 41 (B): Dreamstime/@Lightfieldstudiosprod; p. 42 (TR): Getty Images/Inti St Clair/Digital Vision; p. 42 (TL): Dreamstime/@Ellinnur Bakarudin; p. 42 (CR): Alamy/@Gregg Vignal; p. 43 (B/G): Shutterstock Images/oksana.perkins; p. 44 (TR): Alamy/@Image Source; p. 44 (CR): Alamy/@Tony Cordoza; p. 46 (B/G): Shutterstock Images/majeczka; p. 47 (a): Örnberg, Anna/living4media/Profimedia; p. 47 (b): Dreamstime/©Etienneh75; p. 47 (c): Q2A Media; p. 47 (d): Shutterstock Images/Sakarin Sawasdinaka; p. 47 (e): Q2A Media; p. 47 (f): Alamy/©Tom Merton/OJO Images Ltd; p. 47 (g): Q2A Media; p. 47 (h): Shutterstock Images/Kati Molin; p. 47 (i): Shutterstock Images/ graphyx, p. 47 (j): Alamy/®Milena Boniek; p. 48 (CL): mediadrumworld.com/Media Drum World/Profimedia and Eddie Moore/Zuma Press/Profimedia; p. 48 (BL): mediadrumworld. com/Media Drum World/Profimedia; p. 48-49 (B): mediadrumworld.com/Media Drum World/ Profimedia; p. 49 (TR): Dreamstime/©Vlad Salikhov; p. 50 (TL): Pexels/©Clément Proust; p. 50 (TR): Dreamstime/©Sorapop Udomsri; p. 51 (B): Shutterstock Images/Subbotina Anna; p. 52 (TL): Dreamstime/©Phillip Foster; p. 52 (BL): US Air Force Photo/Alamy/Profimedia; p. 52 (T): Getty Images/Willoughby Owen; p. 53 (CR): Shutterstock Images/Tchara; p. 53 (BR): Shutterstock Images/Daniel Schweinert; p. 53 (TR): Dreamstime/@Mikelane45; p. 54 (BL): Olga Ilina/Alamy/Profimedia; p. 54 (CR): DAVID HAY JONES/Sciencephoto/Profimedia; p. 54 (BR): Shutterstock Images/spwidoff; p. 55 (T): Dreamstime/@lhor Batishchev; p. 55 (TR): Dreamstime/@lvana Stevanoski; p. 56 (TR): Getty Images/Chris Schmidt; p. 58 (BR): Dreamstime/@Chernetskaya; p. 60 (B/G): Alamy/©Trevor Mogg; p. 62 (1): Alamy/@Adams Picture Library t/a api; p. 62 (2): Universal Archive/Universal Images Group/Universal images group/Profimedia; p. 62 (3): parkerphotography/Alamy/Profimedia; p. 63 (4): Ken Russell/TopFoto/Topfoto/Profimedia; p. 64 (TR): All Film Archive/Universal/Mary Evans Picture Library/ Top-foto/Toproto/Profimedia; p. 64 (TR): All Film Archive/Universal/Mary Evans Picture Library/Profimedia; p. 64 (CR): All Film Archive/Mgm/Mary Evans Picture Library/Profimedia; p. 64 (BR): Shutterstock Images/Monkey Business Images; p. 66 (TR): Alamy/@Marka; p. 66 (TC): Shutterstock Images/Fedorov Oleksiy; p. 67 (TR): Alamy/@Esa Hiltula; p. 67 (L): Shutterstock Images/Luis Santos; p. 67 (CL): Shutterstock Images/Denis Dryashkin; p. 67 (CR): Alamy/@P.D. Amedzro; p. 68 (CR): Alamy/@Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Images; p. 69 (TI): Shutterstock Images/@LightField Studios; p. 70 (B/G): Alamy/Marthaus/Cathages/Marthaus/Cat Alamy/@Matthew Chattle; p. 70 (a): Shutterstock Images/Ivaschenko Roman; p. 70 (b) Alamy/@Matthew Chattle; p. 70 (a): Shutterstock Images/Vaschenko Roman; p. 70 (b): Shutterstock Images/Olga Popova; p. 70 (c): Shutterstock Images/Michael Dechev; p. 70 (d): Shutterstock Images/Alphael Dechev; p. 70 (d): Shutterstock Images/Alphael Dechev; p. 70 (e): Shutterstock Images/Alphael Dechev; p. 70 (f): Shutterstock Images/Alphael Dechev; p. 70 (f): Shutterstock Images/Filip Bjorkman; p. 70 (f): Shutterstock Images/Chimpinski; p. 72 (T): JAY DIRECTO/AFP/Profimedia; p. 73 (TR): Shutterstock Images/Karkas; p. 73 (CR): Dreamstime/@Fernandoolivenciamartin; p. 74 (T): Dreamstime/@Philippehalle; p. 76 (B): Pexels/@fauxels; p. 77 (TR): Getty Images/PhotoAlto/Frederic Cirou; p. 78 (CR): Pexels/@Alex P; p. 78 (BR): Pexels/@Ron Lach; p. 78 (BL): Dreamstime/@Albertshakirov; p. 79 (TR): Shutterstock Images/Sompop\_Pundrikabha; p. 80 (1): Shutterstock Images/Maksim Striagnov: p. 80 (1): Shutterstock Images/Demidoff; p. 80 (2): Shutterstock Images/Maksim Striganov; p. 80 (3): Shutterstock Images/Bestshortstop; p. 80 (4): Shutterstock Images/Ruslan Kudrin; p. 80 (5): Shutterstock Images/Itinatt Jufask; p. 80 (6): Shutterstock Images/Gordana Sermek; p. 80

(7): Shutterstock Images/Ruslan Kudrin; p. 80 (8): Shutterstock Images/WithGod; p. 81 (TR): Alamy/©Cultura Creative; p. 84 (B/G): Getty Images/Colin Anderson; p. 82 (BR):

Dreamstime/@Yuri Arcurs; p. 85 (L): Alamy/@Ben Molyneux; p. 85 (C): MK Photo/Alamy/

Profimedia; p. 85 (R): Sam Oaksey/Alamy/Profimedia; p. 88 (T): Getty Images/Jpique; p. 89 (C): Shutterstock Images/Kingarion; p. 89 (CR): Shutterstock Images/Germanskydiver; p. 89 (BC): -/SWNS/Profimedia; p. 89 (BR): Getty Images/MANDEL NGAN/Staff; p. 90 (B/G): Dreamstime/@Massimo Lama; p. 90 (TC): Shutterstock Images/Jarno Gonzalez Zarraonandia; p. 90 (TR): Dreamstime/@James Wagstaff; p. 90 (CR): Getty Images/GERALDO CASO/AFP; p. 91 (CL): Shutterstock Images/MarcISchauer; p. 91 (CR): Alamy/@Emily Riddell; p. 91 (BR): MLADEN ANTONOV/AFP/Profimedia; p. 92 (TR): Alamy/@Blend Images; p. 93 (TR): Alamy/@Aldriv. Alamy/@Adrian Sherratt; p. 94 (B/G): Dreamstime/@Arhivafoto15; p. 95 (a): Alamy/@Andriy Kravchenko; p. 95 (b): Shutterstock Images/Photographee.eu; p. 95 (c): Kreutzer/ imageBROKER/Profimedia; p. 95 (d): Shutterstock Images/Ammentorp Photography; p. 95 (e): Dreamstime/@Mikhail Rudenko; p. 95 (f): Getty Images/YinYang; p. 95 (g): Shutterstock Images/Dustie; p. 95 (h): Shutterstock Images/A Lesik; p. 96 (a): Alamy/@Radius Images; p. 96 (b): Dreamstime/@Stevanovicigor; p. 96 (c): Al generated; p. 99 (B): Getty Images/Imag Source; p. 100 (B): Alamy/@Radius Images; p. 101 (TL): Getty Images/Hemera; p. 101 (CL): Getty Images/EyesWideOpen; p. 101 (CR): Alamy/@Kumar Sriskandan; p. 102 (C): Getty Images/Christof Koepsel/Bongarts; p. 103 (TR): Getty Images/Mark Webster; p. 104 (BL): Dreamstime/@Armentorp; p. 105 (7): Dreamstime/@Dedmazay; p. 105 (8L): Dreamstime/@Stephen Dumayne; p. 106 (BL): Dreamstime/@Aleksandr Rybalko; p. 108 (CR): Dreamstime/@Kateryna Chyzhevska; p. 109 (glass): Dreamstime/@Harald Bolten; p. 109 (paper): Dreamstime/©Caimacanul; p. 109 (plastic): Dreamstime/©Glanum; p. 109 (brick): Dreamstime/©Mohamed Osama; p. 109 (wood): Dreamstime/©Stepan Popov; p. 110 (R): Pexels/icon0.com; p. 112 (BR): Dreamstime/@Brucepalme; p. 113 (TR): Dreamstime/@Larisa Stefaniuk; p. 114 (R): Pexels/Elements Digital; p. 130 (TR): Alamy/@Alaska Stock; p. 131 (TL): Shutterstock Images/Jag\_cz; p. 131 (TR): Shutterstock Images/Matteo photos; p. 131 (BL): Shutterstock Images/Lisa F. Young; p. 131 (BR): Alamy/@Sigrid Olsson/PhotoAlto; p. 132 (TL): Shutterstock Images/Lisa F. Young; p. 131 (BK): Alamy/® Signd Olsson/PhotoAlto; p. 132 (IL) Alamy/® David L. Moore - Lifestyle; p. 132 (BL): Shutterstock Images/OLJ Studio; p. 132 (TR): Corbis/David Lefranc; p. 132 (BR): Shutterstock Images/BKMCphotography; p. 133 (TR): Alamy/® John Elk III; p. 133 (TL): Shutterstock Images/Dja65; p. 135 (TC): Shutterstock Images/Cynoclub; p. 135 (TR): Shutterstock Images/Aksenova Natalya; p. 135 (C): Shutterstock Images/Filip Bjorkman; p. 135 (CR): Shutterstock Images/Chimpinski; p. 136 (TC): Shutterstock Images/Rutterstock Shutterstock Images/Dustie; p. 137 (CR): Shutterstock Images/A Lesik; p. 138 (B/G): Profimedia; p. 139 (TR): Shutterstock Images/Everett Historical; p. 139 (CL): Profimedia; p. 140 (CR): Profimedia; p. 141 (BL): Profimedia; p. 141 (TR): Profimedia; p. 142 (B/G): Shutterstock Images/ Vyntage Visuals; p. 143 (TR): Profimedia; p. 143 (CL): Profimedia; p. 144 (CR): Shutterstock Images/delcarmat; p. 145 (TR): Shutterstock Images/Photobank gallery; p. 145 (BL): Profimedia; p. 146 (TL): Profimedia; p. 146 (CL): Profimedia; p. 147 (TR): Profimedia; p. 147 (CB): Profimedia; p. 148 (T): Getty Images/peplow/iStock/360; p. 149 (L1): Getty Images/Songquan Deng/iStock/360; p. 149 (L2): Getty Images/Matthew Dixon/iStock/360; p. 149 (R1): Dreamstime/@Jason Salmon; p. 149 (R2): Shutterstock Images/Art Konovalov, p. 150 (TR): Getty Images/Christopher Futcher/iStock/360; p. 150 (CR): Shutterstock Images/febri ardi Antonius; p. 151 (C): Dreamstime/@SensejG; p. 151 (TC): Shutterstock Images/jaroslava V; p. 152 (TR): Shutterstock Images/Demidoff; p. 152 (TC): Getty Images/Fotosearch; p. 152 (CL): Bill Waterson/Alamy/Profimedia; p. 152 (C): Frank Worth/Zuma Press/Profimedia; p. 152 (BL): Getty Images/Michael Ochs Archives; p. 152 (BCL): -/Everett/Profimedia; p. 152 (BCR): Shutterstock Images/Aaron Amat; p. 152 (CR): Shutterstock Images/Ragnarock; p. 152 (BR): Getty Images/SSPL; p. 153 (BL): Dreamstime/@Pravinrus Khumpangtip; p. 154 (TL): Shutterstock Images/Klagyivik Viktor; p. 154 (CR): Shutterstock Images/Nayneung1; p. 154 (BL): Dreamstime/@Roman023; p. 155 (TR): Alamy/©Tetra Images; p. 155 (CR): Shutterstock Images/alpimages; p. 156 (TR): Profimedia; p. 156 (CR): Profimedia; p. 156 (CR): Profimedia; p. 156 (BR): Shutterstock Images; p. 157 (CL): Profimedia; p. 157 (CR): Shutterstock Images/4kclips; p. 158 (CL): Profimedia; p. 158 (BL): Profimedia; p. 158 (TR): Dreamstime/© Mike Suszycki; p. 158 (CT): Shutterstock Images/ Alexandra Costescu; p. 160 (CL): Shutterstock Images/My name is boy; p. 160 (TR): Alamy/©Rodrigo Reyes; p. 161 (CL): Shutterstock Images/VTT Studio; p. 161 (CR): Shutterstock Images/photodiem; p. 162 (TL): Corbis/Lea Suzuki/San Francisco Chronicle; p. 162 (TR): Superstock/Science and Society/Science and Society, p. 162 (BR): Shutterstock Images/Serdiukov; p. 162 (CR): Shutterstock Images/Matusciac Alexandru; p. 162 (CL): Shutterstock Images/Viktor Prymachenko; p. 162 (BL): Shutterstock Images/Africa Studio; p. 163 (CL): Dreamstime/©Kotomiti\_okuma; p. 163 (C): Dreamstime/©Euphotica; p. 163 (CR): Dreamstime/©Svitlana Kuchina; p. 164 (TR): Dreamstime/©Bigtunaonline; p. 164 (CR): Dreamstime/©Pablocalvog; p. 164 (BR): Shutterstock/Antonio Guillem; p. 165 (TR): Dreamstime/© Rawpixelimages; p. 166 (BR): Shutterstock Images/Etaphop photo; p. 167 (CL): Shutterstock Images/Everett Collection; p. 167 (C): Shutterstock Images/Everett Shutterstock Images/Alexander\_P; p. 172 (B/G): Shutterstock Images/Peter Hermes Furian; p. 173 (B/G): Shutterstock Images/Bardocz Peter; p. 174 (B/G): Shutterstock Images/Bardocz

The publishers are grateful to the following illustrators: Anni Betts: p. 105 (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6); Nigel Dobbyn (Beehive Illustration): p. 40; Q2A Media Services, Inc.: p. 8, 18, 19, 42, 52, 53, 61, 67, 68, 72, 74, 86, 91, 98, 134, 153, 166, 170; Tony Wilkins: p. 148; Jose Rubio: p. 88.

All video stills by kind permission of:

Discovery Communications, LLC 2015: p. 12 (1, 2, 4), 15, 19, 22 (1, 2, 4), 24, 28, 39, 42, 46 (1, 2, 4), 49, 52, p. 60 (1, 2, 4), 63, 70 (1, 2, 4), 73, 76, 78, 84 (1, 2, 4), 90, 94 (1, 2, 4), 100, 148, 149, 150, 151; 152; 153; 154; 155.

Cambridge University Press: p. 12 (3), 20, 22 (3), 30, 36 (3), 46 (3), 54, 60, 70 (3), 78, 84 (3),

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting and in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable. The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher has no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content is or will remain appropriate.

Corpus Development of this publication has made use of the Cambridge English Corpus (CEC). The CEC is a computer database of contemporary spoken and written English, which currently stands at over one billion words. It includes British English, American English and other varieties of English. It also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, developed in collaboration with the University of Cambridge ESOL Examinations. Cambridge University Press has built up the CEC to provide evidence about language use that helps to produce better language teaching materials

